SUBCHAPTER I—INVESTMENT COMPANIES

§80a–1. Findings and declaration of policy

(a) Findings

Upon the basis of facts disclosed by the record and reports of the Securities and Exchange Commission made pursuant to section 79z–4 [1] of this title, and facts otherwise disclosed and ascertained, it is found that investment companies are affected with a national public interest in that, among other things—

(1) the securities issued by such companies, which constitute a substantial part of all securities publicly offered, are distributed, purchased, paid for, exchanged, transferred, redeemed, and repurchased by use of the mails and means and instrumentalities of interstate commerce, and in the case of the numerous companies which issue redeemable securities this process of distribution and redemption is continuous;

(2) the principal activities of such companies—investing, reinvesting, and trading in securities—are conducted by use of the mails and means and instrumentalities of interstate commerce, including the facilities of national securities exchanges, and constitute a substantial part of all transactions effected in the securities markets of the Nation;

(3) such companies customarily invest and trade in securities issued by, and may dominate and control or otherwise affect the policies and management of, companies engaged in business in interstate commerce;

(4) such companies are media for the investment in the national economy of a substantial part of the national savings and may have a vital effect upon the flow of such savings into the capital markets; and

(5) the activities of such companies, extending over many States, their use of the instrumentalities of interstate commerce and the wide geographic distribution of their security holders, make difficult, if not impossible, effective State regulation of such companies in the interest of investors.

(b) Policy

Upon the basis of facts disclosed by the record and reports of the Securities and Exchange Commission made pursuant to section 79z–4 [1] of this title, and facts otherwise disclosed and ascertained, it is declared that the national public interest and the interest of investors are adversely affected—

(1) when investors purchase, pay for, exchange, receive dividends upon, vote, refrain from voting, sell, or surrender securities issued by investment companies without adequate, accurate, and explicit information, fairly presented, concerning the character of such securities and the circumstances, policies, and financial responsibility of such companies and their management;

(2) when investment companies are organized, operated, managed, or their portfolio securities are selected, in the interest of directors, officers, investment advisers, depositors, or other affiliated persons thereof, in the interest of underwriters, brokers, or dealers, in the interest of special classes of their security holders, or in the interest of other investment companies or persons engaged in other lines of business, rather than in the interest of all classes of such companies' security holders;

(3) when investment companies issue securities containing inequitable or discriminatory provisions, or fail to protect the preferences and privileges of the holders of their outstanding securities;

(4) when the control of investment companies is unduly concentrated through pyramiding or inequitable methods of control, or is inequitably distributed, or when investment companies are managed by irresponsible persons;

(5) when investment companies, in keeping their accounts, in maintaining reserves, and in computing their earnings and the asset value of their outstanding securities, employ unsound or misleading methods, or are not subjected to adequate independent scrutiny;

(6) when investment companies are reorganized, become inactive, or change the character of their business, or when the control or management thereof is transferred, without the consent of their security holders;

(7) when investment companies by excessive borrowing and the issuance of excessive amounts of senior securities increase unduly the speculative character of their junior securities; or

(8) when investment companies operate without adequate assets or reserves.

It is declared that the policy and purposes of this subchapter, in accordance with which the provisions of this subchapter shall be interpreted, are to mitigate and, so far as is feasible, to eliminate the conditions enumerated in this section which adversely affect the national public interest and the interest of investors.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §1, 54 Stat. 789.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

Section 79z–4 of this title, referred to in text, was repealed by Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1263, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 974.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§80a–2. Definitions; applicability; rulemaking considerations

(a) Definitions

When used in this subchapter, unless the context otherwise requires—

(1) "Advisory board" means a board, whether elected or appointed, which is distinct from the board of directors or board of trustees, of an investment company, and which is composed solely of persons who do not serve such company in any other capacity, whether or not the functions of such board are such as to render its members "directors" within the definition of that term, which board has advisory functions as to investments but has no power to determine that any security or other investment shall be purchased or sold by such company.

(2) "Affiliated company" means a company which is an affiliated person.

(3) "Affiliated person" of another person means (A) any person directly or indirectly owning, controlling, or holding with power to vote, 5 per centum or more of the outstanding voting securities of such other person; (B) any person 5 per centum or more of whose outstanding voting securities are directly or indirectly owned, controlled, or held with power to vote, by such other person; (C) any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with, such other person; (D) any officer, director, partner, copartner, or employee of such other person; (E) if such other person is an investment company, any investment adviser thereof or any member of an advisory board thereof; and (F) if such other person is an unincorporated investment company not having a board of directors, the depositor thereof.

(4) "Assignment" includes any direct or indirect transfer or hypothecation of a contract or chose in action by the assignor, or of a controlling block of the assignor's outstanding voting securities by a security holder of the assignor; but does not include an assignment of partnership interests incidental to the death or withdrawal of a minority of the members of the partnership having only a minority interest in the partnership business or to the admission to the partnership of one or more members who, after such admission, shall be only a minority of the members and shall have only a minority interest in the business.

(5) "Bank" means (A) a depository institution (as defined in section 1813 of title 12) or a branch or agency of a foreign bank (as such terms are defined in section 3101 of title 12), (B) a member bank of the Federal Reserve System, (C) any other banking institution or trust company, whether incorporated or not, doing business under the laws of any State or of the United States, a substantial portion of the business of which consists of receiving deposits or exercising fiduciary powers similar to those permitted to national banks under the authority of the Comptroller of the Currency, and which is supervised and examined by State or Federal authority having supervision over banks, and which is not operated for the purpose of evading the provisions of this subchapter, and (D) a receiver, conservator, or other liquidating agent of any institution or firm included in clauses (A), (B), or (C) of this paragraph.

(6) The term "broker" has the same meaning as given in section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c], except that such term does not include any person solely by reason of the fact that such person is an underwriter for one or more investment companies.

(7) "Commission" means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

(8) "Company" means a corporation, a partnership, an association, a joint-stock company, a trust, a fund, or any organized group of persons whether incorporated or not; or any receiver, trustee in a case under title 11 or similar official or any liquidating agent for any of the foregoing, in his capacity as such.

(9) "Control" means the power to exercise a controlling influence over the management or policies of a company, unless such power is solely the result of an official position with such company.

Any person who owns beneficially, either directly or through one or more controlled companies, more than 25 per centum of the voting securities of a company shall be presumed to control such company. Any person who does not so own more than 25 per centum of the voting securities of any company shall be presumed not to control such

company. A natural person shall be presumed not to be a controlled person within the meaning of this subchapter. Any such presumption may be rebutted by evidence, but except as hereinafter provided, shall continue until a determination to the contrary made by the Commission by order either on its own motion or on application by an interested person. If an application filed hereunder is not granted or denied by the Commission within sixty days after filing thereof, the determination sought by the application shall be deemed to have been temporarily granted pending final determination of the Commission thereon. The Commission, upon its own motion or upon application, may by order revoke or modify any order issued under this paragraph whenever it shall find that the determination embraced in such original order is no longer consistent with the facts.

(10) "Convicted" includes a verdict, judgment, or plea of guilty, or a finding of guilt on a plea of nolo contendere, if such verdict, judgment, plea, or finding has not been reversed, set aside, or withdrawn, whether or not sentence has been imposed.

(11) The term "dealer" has the same meaning as given in the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], but does not include an insurance company or investment company.

(12) "Director" means any director of a corporation or any person performing similar functions with respect to any organization, whether incorporated or unincorporated, including any natural person who is a member of a board of trustees of a management company created as a common-law trust.

(13) "Employees' securities company" means any investment company or similar issuer all of the outstanding securities of which (other than short-term paper) are beneficially owned (A) by the employees or persons on retainer of a single employer or of two or more employers each of which is an affiliated company of the other, (B) by former employees of such employer or employers, (C) by members of the immediate family of such employees, persons on retainer, or former employees, (D) by any two or more of the foregoing classes of persons, or (E) by such employer or employers together with any one or more of the foregoing classes of persons.

(14) "Exchange" means any organization, association, or group of persons, whether incorporated or unincorporated, which constitutes, maintains, or provides a market place or facilities for bringing together purchasers and sellers of securities or for otherwise performing with respect to securities the functions commonly performed by a stock exchange as that term is generally understood, and includes the market place and the market facilities maintained by such exchange.

(15) "Face-amount certificate" means any certificate, investment contract, or other security which represents an obligation on the part of its issuer to pay a stated or determinable sum or sums at a fixed or determinable date or dates more than twenty-four months after the date of issuance, in consideration of the payment of periodic installments of a stated or determinable amount (which security shall be known as a face-amount certificate of the "installment type"); or any security which represents a similar obligation on the part of a face-amount certificate company, the consideration for which is the payment of a single lump sum (which security shall be known as a "fully paid" face-amount certificate).

(16) "Government security" means any security issued or guaranteed as to principal or interest by the United States, or by a person controlled or supervised by and acting as an instrumentality of the Government of the United States pursuant to authority granted by the Congress of the United States; or any certificate of deposit for any of the foregoing.

(17) "Insurance company" means a company which is organized as an insurance company, whose primary and predominant business activity is the writing of insurance or the reinsuring of risks underwritten by insurance companies, and which is subject to supervision by the insurance commissioner or a similar official or agency of a State; or any receiver or similar official or any liquidating agent for such a company, in his capacity as such.

(18) "Interstate commerce" means trade, commerce, transportation, or communication among the several States, or between any foreign country and any State, or between any State and any place or ship outside thereof.

(19) "Interested person" of another person means—

(A) when used with respect to an investment company—

(i) any affiliated person of such company,

(ii) any member of the immediate family of any natural person who is an affiliated person of such company,

(iii) any interested person of any investment adviser of or principal underwriter for such company,

(iv) any person or partner or employee of any person who at any time since the beginning of the last two completed fiscal years of such company has acted as legal counsel for such company,

(v) any person or any affiliated person of a person (other than a registered investment company) that, at any time during the 6-month period preceding the date of the determination of whether that person or affiliated person is an interested person, has executed any portfolio transactions for, engaged in any principal transactions with, or distributed shares for—

(I) the investment company;

(II) any other investment company having the same investment adviser as such investment company or holding itself out to investors as a related company for purposes of investment or investor services; or

(III) any account over which the investment company's investment adviser has brokerage placement discretion,

(vi) any person or any affiliated person of a person (other than a registered investment company) that, at any time during the 6-month period preceding the date of the determination of whether that person or affiliated person is an interested person, has loaned money or other property to—

(I) the investment company;

(II) any other investment company having the same investment adviser as such investment company or holding itself out to investors as a related company for purposes of investment or investor services; or

(III) any account for which the investment company's investment adviser has borrowing authority, and

(vii) any natural person whom the Commission by order shall have determined to be an interested person by reason of having had, at any time since the beginning of the last two completed fiscal years of such company, a material business or professional relationship with such company or with the principal executive officer of such company or with any other investment company having the same investment adviser or principal underwriter or with the principal executive officer of such other investment company:

Provided, That no person shall be deemed to be an interested person of an investment company solely by reason of (aa) his being a member of its board of directors or advisory board or an owner of its securities, or (bb) his membership in the immediate family of any person specified in clause (aa) of this proviso; and

(B) when used with respect to an investment adviser of or principal underwriter for any investment company—

(i) any affiliated person of such investment adviser or principal underwriter,

(ii) any member of the immediate family of any natural person who is an affiliated person of such investment adviser or principal underwriter,

(iii) any person who knowingly has any direct or indirect beneficial interest in, or who is designated as trustee, executor, or guardian of any legal interest in, any security issued either by such investment adviser of principal underwriter or by a controlling person or such investment adviser or principal underwriter,

(iv) any person or partner or employee of any person who at any time since the beginning of the last two completed fiscal years of such investment company has acted as legal counsel for such investment adviser or principal underwriter,

(v) any person or any affiliated person of a person (other than a registered investment company) that, at any time during the 6-month period preceding the date of the determination of whether that person or affiliated person is an interested person, has executed any portfolio transactions for, engaged in any principal transactions with, or distributed shares for—

(I) any investment company for which the investment adviser or principal underwriter serves as such;

(II) any investment company holding itself out to investors, for purposes of investment or investor services, as a company related to any investment company for which the investment adviser or principal underwriter serves as such; or

(III) any account over which the investment adviser has brokerage placement discretion,

(vi) any person or any affiliated person of a person (other than a registered investment company) that, at any time during the 6-month period preceding the date of the determination of whether that person or affiliated person is an interested person, has loaned money or other property to—

(I) any investment company for which the investment adviser or principal underwriter serves as such;

(II) any investment company holding itself out to investors, for purposes of investment or investor services, as a company related to any investment company for which the investment adviser or principal underwriter serves as such; or

(III) any account for which the investment adviser has borrowing authority, and

(vii) any natural person whom the Commission by order shall have determined to be an interested person by reason of having had at any time since the beginning of the last two completed fiscal years of such investment company a material business or professional relationship with such investment adviser or principal underwriter or with the principal executive officer or any controlling person of such investment adviser or principal underwriter.

For the purposes of this paragraph (19), "member of the immediate family" means any parent, spouse of a parent, child, spouse of a child, spouse, brother, or sister, and includes step and adoptive relationships. The Commission may modify or revoke any order issued under clause (vii) of subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph whenever it finds that such order is no longer consistent with the facts. No order issued pursuant to clause (vii) of subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph shall become effective until at least sixty days after the entry thereof, and no such order shall affect the status of any person for the purposes of this subchapter or for any other purpose for any period prior to the effective date of such order.

(20) "Investment adviser" of an investment company means (A) any person (other than a bona fide officer, director, trustee, member of an advisory board, or employee of such company, as such) who pursuant to contract with such company regularly furnishes advice to such company with respect to the desirability of investing in, purchasing or selling securities or other property, or is empowered to determine what securities or other property shall be purchased or sold by such company, and (B) any other person who pursuant to contract with a person described in clause (A) of this paragraph regularly performs substantially all of the duties undertaken by such person described in said clause (A); but does not include (i) a person whose advice is furnished solely through uniform publications distributed to subscribers thereto, (ii) a person who furnishes only statistical and other factual information, advice regarding economic factors and trends, or advice as to occasional transactions in specific securities, but without

generally furnishing advice or making recommendations regarding the purchase or sale of securities, (iii) a company furnishing such services at cost to one or more investment companies, insurance companies, or other financial institutions, (iv) any person the character and amount of whose compensation for such services must be approved by a court, or (v) such other persons as the Commission may by rules and regulations or order determine not to be within the intent of this definition.

(21) "Investment banker" means any person engaged in the business of underwriting securities issued by other persons, but does not include an investment company, any person who acts as an underwriter in isolated transactions but not as a part of a regular business, or any person solely by reason of the fact that such person is an underwriter for one or more investment companies.

(22) "Issuer" means every person who issues or proposes to issue any security, or has outstanding any security which it has issued.

(23) "Lend" includes a purchase coupled with an agreement by the vendor to repurchase; "borrow" includes a sale coupled with a similar agreement.

(24) "Majority-owned subsidiary" of a person means a company 50 per centum or more of the outstanding voting securities of which are owned by such person, or by a company which, within the meaning of this paragraph, is a majority-owned subsidiary of such person.

(25) "Means or instrumentality of interstate commerce" includes any facility of a national securities exchange.

(26) "National securities exchange" means an exchange registered under section 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78f].

(27) "Periodic payment plan certificate" means (A) any certificate, investment contract, or other security providing for a series of periodic payments by the holder, and representing an undivided interest in certain specified securities or in a unit or fund of securities purchased wholly or partly with the proceeds of such payments, and (B) any security the issuer of which is also issuing securities of the character described in clause (A) of this paragraph and the holder of which has substantially the same rights and privileges as those which holders of securities of the character described in said clause (A) have upon completing the periodic payments for which such securities provide.

(28) "Person" means a natural person or a company.

(29) "Principal underwriter" of or for any investment company other than a closed-end company, or of any security issued by such a company, means any underwriter who as principal purchases from such company, or pursuant to contract has the right (whether absolute or conditional) from time to time to purchase from such company, any such security for distribution, or who as agent for such company sells or has the right to sell any such security to a dealer or to the public or both, but does not include a dealer who purchases from such company through a principal underwriter acting as agent for such company. "Principal underwriter" of or for a closed-end company or any issuer which is not an investment company, or of any security issued by such a company or issuer, means any underwriter who, in connection with a primary distribution of securities, (A) is in privity of contract with the issuer or an affiliated person of the issuer; (B) acting alone or in concert with one or more other persons, initiates or directs the formation of an underwriting syndicate; or (C) is allowed a rate of gross commission, spread, or other profit greater than the rate allowed another underwriter participating in the distribution.

(30) "Promoter" of a company or a proposed company means a person who, acting alone or in concert with other persons, is initiating or directing, or has within one year initiated or directed, the organization of such company.

(31) "Prospectus", as used in section 80a–22 of this title, means a written prospectus intended to meet the requirements of section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77j(a)] and currently in use. As used elsewhere, "prospectus" means a prospectus as defined in the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.].

(32) "Redeemable security" means any security, other than short-term paper, under the terms of which the holder, upon its presentation to the issuer or to a person designated by the issuer, is entitled (whether absolutely or only out of surplus) to receive approximately his proportionate share of the issuer's current net assets, or the cash equivalent thereof.

(33) "Reorganization" means (A) a reorganization under the supervision of a court of competent jurisdiction; (B) a merger or consolidation; (C) a sale of 75 per centum or more in value of the assets of a company; (D) a restatement of the capital of a company, or an exchange of securities issued by a company for any of its own outstanding securities; (E) a voluntary dissolution or liquidation of a company; (F) a recapitalization or other procedure or transaction which has for its purpose the alteration, modification, or elimination of any of the rights, preferences, or privileges of any class of securities issued by a company, as provided in its charter or other instrument creating or defining such rights, preferences, and privileges; (G) an exchange of securities issued by a company for outstanding securities issued by another company or companies, preliminary to and for the purpose of effecting or consummating any of the foregoing; or (H) any exchange of securities by a company which is not an investment company for securities issued by a registered investment company.

(34) "Sale", "sell", "offer to sell", or "offer for sale" includes every contract of sale or disposition of, attempt or offer to dispose of, or solicitation of an offer to buy, a security or interest in a security, for value. Any security given or delivered with, or as a bonus on account of, any purchase of securities or any other thing, shall be conclusively presumed to constitute a part of the subject of such purchase and to have been sold for value.

(35) "Sales load" means the difference between the price of a security to the public and that portion of the proceeds from its sale which is received and invested or held for investment by the issuer (or in the case of a unit investment trust, by the depositor or trustee), less any portion of such difference deducted for trustee's or custodian's fees, insurance premiums, issue taxes, or administrative expenses or fees which are not properly chargeable to sales or promotional activities. In the case of a periodic payment plan certificate, "sales load" includes the sales load

on any investment company securities in which the payments made on such certificate are invested, as well as the sales load on the certificate itself.

(36) "Security" means any note, stock, treasury stock, security future, bond, debenture, evidence of indebtedness, certificate of interest or participation in any profit-sharing agreement, collateral-trust certificate, preorganization certificate or subscription, transferable share, investment contract, voting-trust certificate, certificate of deposit for a security, fractional undivided interest in oil, gas, or other mineral rights, any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security (including a certificate of deposit) or on any group or index of securities (including any interest therein or based on the value thereof), or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange relating to foreign currency, or, in general, any interest or instrument commonly known as a "security", or any certificate of interest or participation in, temporary or interim certificate for, receipt for, guarantee of, or warrant or right to subscribe to or purchase, any of the foregoing.

(37) "Separate account" means an account established and maintained by an insurance company pursuant to the laws of any State or territory of the United States, or of Canada or any province thereof, under which income, gains and losses, whether or not realized, from assets allocated to such account, are, in accordance with the applicable contract, credited to or charged against such account without regard to other income, gains, or losses of the insurance company.

(38) "Short-term paper" means any note, draft, bill of exchange, or banker's acceptance payable on demand or having a maturity at the time of issuance of not exceeding nine months, exclusive of days of grace, or any renewal thereof payable on demand or having a maturity likewise limited; and such other classes of securities, of a commercial rather than an investment character, as the Commission may designate by rules and regulations.

(39) "State" means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, or any other possession of the United States.

(40) "Underwriter" means any person who has purchased from an issuer with a view to, or sells for an issuer in connection with, the distribution of any security, or participates or has a direct or indirect participation in any such undertaking, or participates or has a participation in the direct or indirect underwriting of any such undertaking; but such term shall not include a person whose interest is limited to a commission from an underwriter or dealer not in excess of the usual and customary distributor's or seller's commission. As used in this paragraph the term "issuer" shall include, in addition to an issuer, any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by the issuer, or any person under direct or indirect common control with the issuer. When the distribution of the securities in respect of which any person is an underwriter is completed such person shall cease to be an underwriter in respect of such securities or the issuer thereof.

(41) "Value", with respect to assets of registered investment companies, except as provided in subsection (b) of section 80a–28 of this title, means—

(A) as used in sections 80a–3, 80a–5, and 80a–12 of this title, (i) with respect to securities owned at the end of the last preceding fiscal quarter for which market quotations are readily available, the market value at the end of such quarter; (ii) with respect to other securities and assets owned at the end of the last preceding fiscal quarter, fair value at the end of such quarter, as determined in good faith by the board of directors; and (iii) with respect to securities and other assets acquired after the end of the last preceding fiscal quarter, the cost thereof; and

(B) as used elsewhere in this subchapter, (i) with respect to securities for which market quotations are readily available, the market value of such securities; and (ii) with respect to other securities and assets, fair value as determined in good faith by the board of directors;

in each case as of such time or times as determined pursuant to this subchapter, and the rules and regulations issued by the Commission hereunder. Notwithstanding the fact that market quotations for securities issued by controlled companies are available, the board of directors may in good faith determine the value of such securities: *Provided*, That the value so determined is not in excess of the higher of market value or asset value of such securities in the case of majority-owned subsidiaries, and is not in excess of market value in the case of other controlled companies.

For purposes of the valuation of those assets of a registered diversified company which are not subject to the limitations provided for in section 80a–5(b)(1) of this title, the Commission may, by rules and regulations or orders, permit any security to be carried at cost, if it shall determine that such procedure is consistent with the general intent and purposes of this subchapter. For purposes of sections 80a–5 and 80a–12 of this title in lieu of values determined as provided in clause (A) above, the Commission shall by rules and regulations permit valuation of securities at cost or other basis in cases where it may be more convenient for such company to make its computations on such basis by reason of the necessity or desirability of complying with the provisions of any United States revenue laws or rules and regulations issued thereunder, or the laws or the rules and regulations issued thereunder of any State in which the securities of such company may be qualified for sale.

The foregoing definition shall not derogate from the authority of the Commission with respect to the reports, information, and documents to be filed with the Commission by any registered company, or with respect to the accounting policies and principles to be followed by any such company, as provided in sections 80a–8, 80a–29, and 80a–30 of this title.

(42) "Voting security" means any security presently entitling the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of a company. A specified percentage of the outstanding voting securities of a company means such amount of its outstanding voting securities as entitles the holder or holders thereof to cast said specified percentage of the aggregate votes which the holders of all the outstanding voting securities of such company are entitled to cast.

The vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of a company means the vote, at the annual or a special meeting of the security holders of such company duly called, (A) of 67 per centum or more of the voting securities present at such meeting, if the holders of more than 50 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of such company are present or represented by proxy; or (B) of more than 50 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of such company, whichever is the less.

(43) "Wholly-owned subsidiary" of a person means a company 95 per centum or more of the outstanding voting securities of which are owned by such person, or by a company which, within the meaning of this paragraph, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of such person.

(44) "Securities Act of 1933" [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], "Securities Exchange Act of 1934" [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], and "Trust Indenture Act of 1939" [15 U.S.C. 77aaa et seq.] mean those acts, respectively, as heretofore or hereafter amended.

(45) "Savings and loan association" means a savings and loan association, building and loan association, cooperative bank, homestead association, or similar institution, which is supervised and examined by State or Federal authority having supervision over any such institution, and a receiver, conservator, or other liquidating agent of any such institution.

(46) "Eligible portfolio company" means any issuer which—

(A) is organized under the laws of, and has its principal place of business in, any State or States;

(B) is neither an investment company as defined in section 80a–3 of this title (other than a small business investment company which is licensed by the Small Business Administration to operate under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958 [15 U.S.C. 661 et seq.] and which is a wholly-owned subsidiary of the business development company) nor a company which would be an investment company except for the exclusion from the definition of investment company in section 80a–3(c) of this title; and

(C) satisfies one of the following:

(i) it does not have any class of securities with respect to which a member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer may extend or maintain credit to or for a customer pursuant to rules or regulations adopted by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System under section 7 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78g];

(ii) it is controlled by a business development company, either alone or as part of a group acting together, and such business development company in fact exercises a controlling influence over the management or policies of such eligible portfolio company and, as a result of such control, has an affiliated person who is a director of such eligible portfolio company;

(iii) it has total assets of not more than $4,000,000, and capital and surplus (shareholders' equity less retained earnings) of not less than $2,000,000, except that the Commission may adjust such amounts by rule, regulation, or order to reflect changes in 1 or more generally accepted indices or other indicators for small businesses; or

(iv) it meets such other criteria as the Commission may, by rule, establish as consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes fairly intended by the policy and provisions of this subchapter.

(47) "Making available significant managerial assistance" by a business development company means—

(A) any arrangement whereby a business development company, through its directors, officers, employees, or general partners, offers to provide, and, if accepted, does so provide, significant guidance and counsel concerning the management, operations, or business objectives and policies of a portfolio company;

(B) the exercise by a business development company of a controlling influence over the management or policies of a portfolio company by the business development company acting individually or as part of a group acting together which controls such portfolio company; or

(C) with respect to a small business investment company licensed by the Small Business Administration to operate under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958 [15 U.S.C. 661 et seq.], the making of loans to a portfolio company.

For purposes of subparagraph (A), the requirement that a business development company make available significant managerial assistance shall be deemed to be satisfied with respect to any particular portfolio company where the business development company purchases securities of such portfolio company in conjunction with one or more other persons acting together, and at least one of the persons in the group makes available significant managerial assistance to such portfolio company, except that such requirement will not be deemed to be satisfied if the business development company, in all cases, makes available significant managerial assistance solely in the manner described in this sentence.

(48) "Business development company" means any closed-end company which—

(A) is organized under the laws of, and has its principal place of business in, any State or States;

(B) is operated for the purpose of making investments in securities described in paragraphs (1) through (3) of section 80a–54(a) of this title, and makes available significant managerial assistance with respect to the issuers of such securities, provided that a business development company must make available significant managerial assistance only with respect to the companies which are treated by such business development company as satisfying the 70 per centum of the value of its total assets condition of section 80a–54 of this title; and provided further that a business development company need not make available significant managerial assistance with respect to any company described in paragraph (46)(C)(iii), or with respect to any other company that meets such

criteria as the Commission may by rule, regulation, or order permit, as consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this subchapter; and

(C) has elected pursuant to section 80a–53(a) of this title to be subject to the provisions of sections 80a–54 through 80a–64 of this title.

(49) "Foreign securities authority" means any foreign government or any governmental body or regulatory organization empowered by a foreign government to administer or enforce its laws as they relate to securities matters.

(50) "Foreign financial regulatory authority" means any (A) foreign securities authority, (B) other governmental body or foreign equivalent of a self-regulatory organization empowered by a foreign government to administer or enforce its laws relating to the regulation of fiduciaries, trusts, commercial lending, insurance, trading in contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery, or other instruments traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market, board of trade or foreign equivalent, or other financial activities, or (C) membership organization a function of which is to regulate the participation of its members in activities listed above.

(51)(A) "Qualified purchaser" means—

(i) any natural person (including any person who holds a joint, community property, or other similar shared ownership interest in an issuer that is excepted under section 80a–3(c)(7) of this title with that person's qualified purchaser spouse) who owns not less than $5,000,000 in investments, as defined by the Commission;

(ii) any company that owns not less than $5,000,000 in investments and that is owned directly or indirectly by or for 2 or more natural persons who are related as siblings or spouse (including former spouses), or direct lineal descendants by birth or adoption, spouses of such persons, the estates of such persons, or foundations, charitable organizations, or trusts established by or for the benefit of such persons;

(iii) any trust that is not covered by clause (ii) and that was not formed for the specific purpose of acquiring the securities offered, as to which the trustee or other person authorized to make decisions with respect to the trust, and each settlor or other person who has contributed assets to the trust, is a person described in clause (i), (ii), or (iv); or

(iv) any person, acting for its own account or the accounts of other qualified purchasers, who in the aggregate owns and invests on a discretionary basis, not less than $25,000,000 in investments.

(B) The Commission may adopt such rules and regulations applicable to the persons and trusts specified in clauses (i) through (iv) of subparagraph (A) as it determines are necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(C) The term "qualified purchaser" does not include a company that, but for the exceptions provided for in paragraph (1) or (7) of section 80a–3(c) of this title, would be an investment company (hereafter in this paragraph referred to as an "excepted investment company"), unless all beneficial owners of its outstanding securities (other than short-term paper), determined in accordance with section 80a–3(c)(1)(A) of this title, that acquired such securities on or before April 30, 1996 (hereafter in this paragraph referred to as "pre-amendment beneficial owners"), and all pre-amendment beneficial owners of the outstanding securities (other than short-term paper) of any excepted investment company that, directly or indirectly, owns any outstanding securities of such excepted investment company, have consented to its treatment as a qualified purchaser. Unanimous consent of all trustees, directors, or general partners of a company or trust referred to in clause (ii) or (iii) of subparagraph (A) shall constitute consent for purposes of this subparagraph.

(52) The terms "security future" and "narrow-based security index" have the same meanings as provided in section 3(a)(55) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(55)].

(53) The term "credit rating agency" has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c].

(54) The terms "commodity pool", "commodity pool operator", "commodity trading advisor", "major swap participant", "swap", "swap dealer", and "swap execution facility" have the same meanings as in section 1a of title 7.

(b) Applicability to government

No provision in this subchapter shall apply to, or be deemed to include, the United States, a State, or any political subdivision of a State, or any agency, authority, or instrumentality of any one or more of the foregoing, or any corporation which is wholly owned directly or indirectly by any one or more of the foregoing, or any officer, agent, or employee of any of the foregoing acting as such in the course of his official duty, unless such provision makes specific reference thereto.

(c) Consideration of promotion of efficiency, competition, and capital formation

Whenever pursuant to this subchapter the Commission is engaged in rulemaking and is required to consider or determine whether an action is consistent with the public interest, the Commission shall also consider, in addition to the protection of investors, whether the action will promote efficiency, competition, and capital formation.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §2, 54 Stat. 790; Proc. No. 2695, eff. July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1352; Aug. 10, 1954, ch. 667, title IV, §401, 68 Stat. 688; Pub. L. 86–70, §12(d), June 25, 1959, 73 Stat. 143; Pub. L. 86–624, §7(c), July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 412; Pub. L. 91–547, §2(a), Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1413; Pub. L. 95–598, title III, §310(a), Nov. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 2676; Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §101, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2275; Pub. L. 97–303, §5, Oct. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1409; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §§601–603, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1260; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, §206(a),

Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2720; Pub. L. 104–290, title I, §106(c), title II, §209(b), title V, §§503, 504, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3425, 3434, 3445; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(c)(1), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §§213(a), (b), 215, 216, 223, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1397, 1399, 1401; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §209(a)(1), (3)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A-435, 2763A-436; Pub. L. 109–291, §4(b)(2)(A), Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1337; Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §769, title IX, §§985(d)(1), 986(c)(1), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1801, 1934, 1936; Pub. L. 119–27, §17(b)(1), July 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 462.)

Amendment of Subsection (a)(36)

Pub. L. 119–27, §§17(b)(1), 20, July 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 462, 466, provided that, effective on the earlier of the date that is 18 months after July 18, 2025, or the date that is 120 days after the date on which the primary Federal payment stablecoin regulators issue any final regulations implementing Pub. L. 119–27, subsection (a)(36) of this section is amended by adding at the end the following: "The term 'security' does not include a payment stablecoin issued by a permitted payment stablecoin issuer, as such terms are defined in section 5901 of title 12." See 2025 Amendment note below.

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (a)(11), (44), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified principally to chapter 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (a)(31), (44), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Trust Indenture Act of 1939, referred to in subsec. (a)(44), is title III of act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, as added Aug. 3, 1939, ch. 411, 53 Stat. 1149, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§77aaa et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77aaa of this title and Tables.

The Small Business Investment Act of 1958, referred to in subsec. (a)(46)(B), (47)(C), is Pub. L. 85–699, Aug. 21, 1958, 72 Stat. 689, which is classified principally to chapter 14B (§661 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 661 of this title and Tables.

Codification

Words "Philippine Islands" deleted from definition of term "State" under authority of Proc. No. 2695, which granted independence to the Philippine Islands. Proc. No. 2695 was issued pursuant to section 1394 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse, and is set out as a note under that section.

Amendments

2025—Subsec. (a)(36). Pub. L. 119–27 inserted at end "The term 'security' does not include a payment stablecoin issued by a permitted payment stablecoin issuer, as such terms are defined in section 5901 of title 12."

2010—Subsec. (a)(19). Pub. L. 111–203, §985(d)(1)(A), substituted "clause (vii)" for "clause (vi)" in two places in concluding provisions.

Subsec. (a)(19)(A)(vi)(III), (B)(vi)(III). Pub. L. 111–203, §985(d)(1)(B), inserted "and" at end.

Subsec. (a)(44). Pub. L. 111–203, §986(c)(1), struck out " 'Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935'," after " 'Securities Exchange Act of 1934',".

Subsec. (a)(54). Pub. L. 111–203, §769, added par. (54).

2006—Subsec. (a)(53). Pub. L. 109–291 added par. (53).

2000—Subsec. (a)(36). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §209(a)(1)], inserted "security future," after "treasury stock,".

Subsec. (a)(52). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §209(a)(3)], added par. (52).

1999—Subsec. (a)(5)(A). Pub. L. 106–102, §223, substituted "a depository institution (as defined in section 1813 of title 12) or a branch or agency of a foreign bank (as such terms are defined in section 3101 of title 12)" for "a banking institution organized under the laws of the United States".

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 106–102, §215, amended par. (6) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (6) read as follows: " 'Broker' means any person engaged in the business of effecting transactions in securities for the account of others, but does not include a bank or any person solely by reason of the fact that such person is an underwriter for one or more investment companies."

Subsec. (a)(11). Pub. L. 106–102, §216, amended par. (11) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (11) read as follows: " 'Dealer' means any person regularly engaged in the business of buying and selling securities

for his own account, through a broker or otherwise, but does not include a bank, insurance company, or investment company, or any person insofar as he is engaged in investing, reinvesting, or trading in securities, or in owning or holding securities, for his own account, either individually or in some fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of a regular business."

Subsec. (a)(19)(A)(v). Pub. L. 106–102, §213(a)(1), added cl. (v) and struck out former cl. (v) which read as follows: "any broker or dealer registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or any affiliated person of such a broker or dealer, and".

Subsec. (a)(19)(A)(vi), (vii). Pub. L. 106–102, §213(a)(2), (3), added cl. (vi) and redesignated former cl. (vi) as (vii).

Subsec. (a)(19)(B)(v). Pub. L. 106–102, §213(b)(1), added cl. (v) and struck out former cl. (v) which read as follows: "any broker or dealer registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or any affiliated person of such a broker or dealer, and".

Subsec. (a)(19)(B)(vi), (vii). Pub. L. 106–102, §213(b)(2), (3), added cl. (vi) and redesignated former cl. (vi) as (vii).

1998—Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 105–353 made a technical amendment to reference in original act which appears in text as reference to title 11.

1996—Subsec. (a)(46)(C)(iii), (iv). Pub. L. 104–290, §503, added cl. (iii) and redesignated former cl. (iii) as (iv).

Subsec. (a)(48)(B). Pub. L. 104–290, §504, inserted at end "provided further that a business development company need not make available significant managerial assistance with respect to any company described in paragraph (46)(C)(iii), or with respect to any other company that meets such criteria as the Commission may by rule, regulation, or order permit, as consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this subchapter; and".

Subsec. (a)(51). Pub. L. 104–290, §209(b), added par. (51).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104–290, §106(c), added subsec. (c).

1990—Subsec. (a)(49), (50). Pub. L. 101–550 added pars. (49) and (50).

1987—Subsec. (a)(19). Pub. L. 100–181, §601, inserted "completed" before "fiscal years" wherever appearing in subpars. (A)(iv), (vi) and (B)(iv), (vi).

Subsec. (a)(39). Pub. L. 100–181, §602, struck out reference to Canal Zone.

Subsec. (a)(48)(B). Pub. L. 100–181, §603, substituted "paragraphs (1) through (3) of section 80a–54(a) of this title" for "sections 80a–54(a)(1) through (3) of this title".

1982—Subsec. (a)(36). Pub. L. 97–303 inserted "any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security (including a certificate of deposit) or on any group or index of securities (including any interest therein or based on the value thereof), or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange relating to foreign currency," after "mineral rights,".

1980—Subsec. (a)(46) to (48). Pub. L. 96–477 added pars. (46) to (48).

1978—Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 95–598 substituted "a case under title 11" for "bankruptcy".

1970—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 91–547, §2(a)(1), substituted "under the authority of the Comptroller of the Currency" for "under section 248(k) of title 12,".

Subsec. (a)(19). Pub. L. 91–547, §2(a)(3), added par. (19). Former par. (19) redesignated (20).

Subsecs. (a)(20) to (36). Pub. L. 91–547, §2(a)(2), redesignated former pars. (19) to (35) as (20) to (36), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(37). Pub. L. 91–547, §2(a)(4), added par. (37). Former par. (37) redesignated (39).

Subsecs. (a)(38) to (44). Pub. L. 91–547, §2(a)(2), redesignated former pars. (36) to (42) as (38) to (44).

Subsec. (a)(45). Pub. L. 91–547, §2(a)(5), added par. (45).

1960—Subsec. (a)(37). Pub. L. 86–624 struck out reference to Hawaii.

1959—Subsec. (a)(37). Pub. L. 86–70 struck out reference to Alaska.

1954—Subsec. (a)(30). Act Aug. 10, 1954, substituted "section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933" for "section 5(b) of the Securities Act of 1933".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2025 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 119–27 effective on the earlier of the date that is 18 months after July 18, 2025, or the date that is 120 days after the date on which the primary Federal payment stablecoin regulators issue any final regulations implementing Pub. L. 119–27, see section 20 of Pub. L. 119–27, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5901 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by sections 985(d)(1) and 986(c)(1) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 769 of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

Effective Date of 1999 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 106–102 effective 18 months after Nov. 12, 1999, see section 225 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Effective Date of 1996 Amendment

Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §209(e), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3436, provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section and section 80a–3 of this title] shall take effect on the earlier of—

"(1) 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 1996]; or

"(2) the date on which the rulemaking required under subsection (d)(2) [set out below] is completed."

Effective Date of 1978 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 95–598 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 402(a) of Pub. L. 95–598, set out as an Effective Date note preceding section 101 of Title 11, Bankruptcy.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Effective Date of 1954 Amendment

Amendment by act Aug. 10, 1954, effective 60 days after Aug. 10, 1954, see note set out under section 77b of this title.

Regulations

Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §209(d)(2), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3435, provided that: "Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 1996], the Commission shall prescribe rules defining the term, or otherwise identifying, 'investments' for purposes of section 2(a)(51) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–2(a)(51)], as added by this Act."

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–3. Definition of investment company

(a) Definitions

(1) When used in this subchapter, "investment company" means any issuer which—

(A) is or holds itself out as being engaged primarily, or proposes to engage primarily, in the business of investing, reinvesting, or trading in securities;

(B) is engaged or proposes to engage in the business of issuing face-amount certificates of the installment type, or has been engaged in such business and has any such certificate outstanding; or

(C) is engaged or proposes to engage in the business of investing, reinvesting, owning, holding, or trading in securities, and owns or proposes to acquire investment securities having a value exceeding 40 per centum of the value of such issuer's total assets (exclusive of Government securities and cash items) on an unconsolidated basis.

(2) As used in this section, "investment securities" includes all securities except (A) Government securities, (B) securities issued by employees' securities companies, and (C) securities issued by majority-owned subsidiaries of the

owner which (i) are not investment companies, and (ii) are not relying on the exception from the definition of investment company in paragraph (1) or (7) of subsection (c).

(b) Exemption from provisions

Notwithstanding paragraph (1)(C) of subsection (a), none of the following persons is an investment company within the meaning of this subchapter:

(1) Any issuer primarily engaged, directly or through a wholly-owned subsidiary or subsidiaries, in a business or businesses other than that of investing, reinvesting, owning, holding, or trading in securities.

(2) Any issuer which the Commission, upon application by such issuer, finds and by order declares to be primarily engaged in a business or businesses other than that of investing, reinvesting, owning, holding, or trading in securities either directly or (A) through majority-owned subsidiaries or (B) through controlled companies conducting similar types of businesses. The filing of an application under this paragraph in good faith by an issuer other than a registered investment company shall exempt the applicant for a period of sixty days from all provisions of this subchapter applicable to investment companies as such. For cause shown, the Commission by order may extend such period of exemption for an additional period or periods. Whenever the Commission, upon its own motion or upon application, finds that the circumstances which gave rise to the issuance of an order granting an application under this paragraph no longer exist, the Commission shall by order revoke such order.

(3) Any issuer all the outstanding securities of which (other than short-term paper and directors' qualifying shares) are directly or indirectly owned by a company excepted from the definition of investment company by paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection.

(c) Further exemptions

Notwithstanding subsection (a), none of the following persons is an investment company within the meaning of this subchapter:

(1) Any issuer whose outstanding securities (other than short-term paper) are beneficially owned by not more than one hundred persons (or, in the case of a qualifying venture capital fund, 250 persons) and which is not making and does not presently propose to make a public offering of its securities. Such issuer shall be deemed to be an investment company for purposes of the limitations set forth in subparagraphs (A)(i) and (B)(i) of section 80a–12(d)(1) of this title governing the purchase or other acquisition by such issuer of any security issued by any registered investment company and the sale of any security issued by any registered open-end investment company to any such issuer. For purposes of this paragraph:

(A) Beneficial ownership by a company shall be deemed to be beneficial ownership by one person, except that, if the company owns 10 per centum or more of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer, and is or, but for the exception provided for in this paragraph or paragraph (7), would be an investment company, the beneficial ownership shall be deemed to be that of the holders of such company's outstanding securities (other than short-term paper).

(B) Beneficial ownership by any person who acquires securities or interests in securities of an issuer described in the first sentence of this paragraph shall be deemed to be beneficial ownership by the person from whom such transfer was made, pursuant to such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors and the purposes fairly intended by the policy and provisions of this subchapter, where the transfer was caused by legal separation, divorce, death, or other involuntary event.

(C)(i) The term "qualifying venture capital fund" means a venture capital fund that has not more than $10,000,000 in aggregate capital contributions and uncalled committed capital, with such dollar amount to be indexed for inflation once every 5 years by the Commission, beginning from a measurement made by the Commission on a date selected by the Commission, rounded to the nearest $1,000,000.

(ii) The term "venture capital fund" has the meaning given the term in section 275.203(l)–1 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, or any successor regulation.

(2)(A) Any person primarily engaged in the business of underwriting and distributing securities issued by other persons, selling securities to customers, acting as broker, and acting as market intermediary, or any one or more of such activities, whose gross income normally is derived principally from such business and related activities.

(B) For purposes of this paragraph—

(i) the term "market intermediary" means any person that regularly holds itself out as being willing contemporaneously to engage in, and that is regularly engaged in, the business of entering into transactions on both sides of the market for a financial contract or one or more such financial contracts; and

(ii) the term "financial contract" means any arrangement that—

(I) takes the form of an individually negotiated contract, agreement, or option to buy, sell, lend, swap, or repurchase, or other similar individually negotiated transaction commonly entered into by participants in the financial markets;

(II) is in respect of securities, commodities, currencies, interest or other rates, other measures of value, or any other financial or economic interest similar in purpose or function to any of the foregoing; and

(III) is entered into in response to a request from a counter party for a quotation, or is otherwise entered into and structured to accommodate the objectives of the counter party to such arrangement.

(3) Any bank or insurance company; any savings and loan association, building and loan association, cooperative bank, homestead association, or similar institution, or any receiver, conservator, liquidator, liquidating agent, or similar official or person thereof or therefor; or any common trust fund or similar fund maintained by a bank exclusively for the collective investment and reinvestment of moneys contributed thereto by the bank in its capacity as a trustee, executor, administrator, or guardian, if—

(A) such fund is employed by the bank solely as an aid to the administration of trusts, estates, or other accounts created and maintained for a fiduciary purpose;

(B) except in connection with the ordinary advertising of the bank's fiduciary services, interests in such fund are not—

(i) advertised; or

(ii) offered for sale to the general public; and

(C) fees and expenses charged by such fund are not in contravention of fiduciary principles established under applicable Federal or State law.

(4) Any person substantially all of whose business is confined to making small loans, industrial banking, or similar businesses.

(5) Any person who is not engaged in the business of issuing redeemable securities, face-amount certificates of the installment type or periodic payment plan certificates, and who is primarily engaged in one or more of the following businesses: (A) Purchasing or otherwise acquiring notes, drafts, acceptances, open accounts receivable, and other obligations representing part or all of the sales price of merchandise, insurance, and services; (B) making loans to manufacturers, wholesalers, and retailers of, and to prospective purchasers of, specified merchandise, insurance, and services; and (C) purchasing or otherwise acquiring mortgages and other liens on and interests in real estate.

(6) Any company primarily engaged, directly or through majority-owned subsidiaries, in one or more of the businesses described in paragraphs (3), (4), and (5) of this subsection, or in one or more of such businesses (from which not less than 25 per centum of such company's gross income during its last fiscal year was derived) together with an additional business or businesses other than investing, reinvesting, owning, holding, or trading in securities.

(7)(A) Any issuer, the outstanding securities of which are owned exclusively by persons who, at the time of acquisition of such securities, are qualified purchasers, and which is not making and does not at that time propose to make a public offering of such securities. Securities that are owned by persons who received the securities from a qualified purchaser as a gift or bequest, or in a case in which the transfer was caused by legal separation, divorce, death, or other involuntary event, shall be deemed to be owned by a qualified purchaser, subject to such rules, regulations, and orders as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(B) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), an issuer is within the exception provided by this paragraph if—

(i) in addition to qualified purchasers, outstanding securities of that issuer are beneficially owned by not more than 100 persons who are not qualified purchasers, if—

(I) such persons acquired any portion of the securities of such issuer on or before September 1, 1996; and

(II) at the time at which such persons initially acquired the securities of such issuer, the issuer was excepted by paragraph (1); and

(ii) prior to availing itself of the exception provided by this paragraph—

(I) such issuer has disclosed to each beneficial owner, as determined under paragraph (1), that future investors will be limited to qualified purchasers, and that ownership in such issuer is no longer limited to not more than 100 persons; and

(II) concurrently with or after such disclosure, such issuer has provided each beneficial owner, as determined under paragraph (1), with a reasonable opportunity to redeem any part or all of their interests in the issuer, notwithstanding any agreement to the contrary between the issuer and such persons, for that person's proportionate share of the issuer's net assets.

(C) Each person that elects to redeem under subparagraph (B)(ii)(II) shall receive an amount in cash equal to that person's proportionate share of the issuer's net assets, unless the issuer elects to provide such person with the option of receiving, and such person agrees to receive, all or a portion of such person's share in assets of the issuer. If the issuer elects to provide such persons with such an opportunity, disclosure concerning such opportunity shall be made in the disclosure required by subparagraph (B)(ii)(I).

(D) An issuer that is excepted under this paragraph shall nonetheless be deemed to be an investment company for purposes of the limitations set forth in subparagraphs (A)(i) and (B)(i) of section 80a–12(d)(1) of this title relating to the purchase or other acquisition by such issuer of any security issued by any registered investment company and the sale of any security issued by any registered open-end investment company to any such issuer.

(E) For purposes of determining compliance with this paragraph and paragraph (1), an issuer that is otherwise excepted under this paragraph and an issuer that is otherwise excepted under paragraph (1) shall not be treated by the Commission as being a single issuer for purposes of determining whether the outstanding securities of the issuer excepted under paragraph (1) are beneficially owned by not more than 100 persons or whether the outstanding

securities of the issuer excepted under this paragraph are owned by persons that are not qualified purchasers. Nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to establish that a person is a bona fide qualified purchaser for purposes of this paragraph or a bona fide beneficial owner for purposes of paragraph (1).

(8) [Repealed] Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §986(c)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1936.

(9) Any person substantially all of whose business consists of owning or holding oil, gas, or other mineral royalties or leases, or fractional interests therein, or certificates of interest or participation in or investment contracts relative to such royalties, leases, or fractional interests.

(10)(A) Any company organized and operated exclusively for religious, educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, or reformatory purposes—

(i) no part of the net earnings of which inures to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual; or

(ii) which is or maintains a fund described in subparagraph (B).

(B) For the purposes of subparagraph (A)(ii), a fund is described in this subparagraph if such fund is a pooled income fund, collective trust fund, collective investment fund, or similar fund maintained by a charitable organization exclusively for the collective investment and reinvestment of one or more of the following:

(i) assets of the general endowment fund or other funds of one or more charitable organizations;

(ii) assets of a pooled income fund;

(iii) assets contributed to a charitable organization in exchange for the issuance of charitable gift annuities;

(iv) assets of a charitable remainder trust or of any other trust, the remainder interests of which are irrevocably dedicated to any charitable organization;

(v) assets of a charitable lead trust;

(vi) assets of a trust, the remainder interests of which are revocably dedicated to or for the benefit of 1 or more charitable organizations, if the ability to revoke the dedication is limited to circumstances involving—

(I) an adverse change in the financial circumstances of a settlor or an income beneficiary of the trust;

(II) a change in the identity of the charitable organization or organizations having the remainder interest, provided that the new beneficiary is also a charitable organization; or

(III) both the changes described in subclauses (I) and (II);

(vii) assets of a trust not described in clauses (i) through (v), the remainder interests of which are revocably dedicated to a charitable organization, subject to subparagraph (C); or

(viii) such assets as the Commission may prescribe by rule, regulation, or order in accordance with section 80a–6(c) of this title.

(C) A fund that contains assets described in clause (vii) of subparagraph (B) shall be excluded from the definition of an investment company for a period of 3 years after December 8, 1995, but only if—

(i) such assets were contributed before the date which is 60 days after December 8, 1995; and

(ii) such assets are commingled in the fund with assets described in one or more of clauses (i) through (vi) and (viii) of subparagraph (B).

(D) For purposes of this paragraph—

(i) a trust or fund is "maintained" by a charitable organization if the organization serves as a trustee or administrator of the trust or fund or has the power to remove the trustees or administrators of the trust or fund and to designate new trustees or administrators;

(ii) the term "pooled income fund" has the same meaning as in section 642(c)(5) of title 26;

(iii) the term "charitable organization" means an organization described in paragraphs (1) through (5) of section 170(c) or section 501(c)(3) of title 26;

(iv) the term "charitable lead trust" means a trust described in section 170(f)(2)(B), 2055(e)(2)(B), or 2522(c)(2)(B) of title 26;

(v) the term "charitable remainder trust" means a charitable remainder annuity trust or a charitable remainder unitrust, as those terms are defined in section 664(d) of title 26; and

(vi) the term "charitable gift annuity" means an annuity issued by a charitable organization that is described in section 501(m)(5) of title 26.

(11) Any employee's stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing trust which meets the requirements for qualification under section 401 of title 26; or any governmental plan described in section 77c(a)(2)(C) of this title; or any collective trust fund maintained by a bank consisting solely of assets of one or more of such trusts, government plans, or church plans, companies or accounts that are excluded from the definition of an investment company under paragraph (14) of this subsection; or any separate account the assets of which are derived solely from (A) contributions under pension or profit-sharing plans which meet the requirements of section 401 of title 26 or the requirements for deduction of the employer's contribution under section 404(a)(2) of title 26, (B) contributions under governmental plans in connection with which interests, participations, or securities are exempted from the registration provisions of section 77e of this title by section 77c(a)(2)(C) of this title, and (C) advances made by an insurance company in connection with the operation of such separate account.

(12) Any voting trust the assets of which consist exclusively of securities of a single issuer which is not an investment company.

(13) Any security holders' protective committee or similar issuer having outstanding and issuing no securities other than certificates of deposit and short-term paper.

(14) Any church plan described in section 414(e) of title 26, if, under any such plan, no part of the assets may be used for, or diverted to, purposes other than the exclusive benefit of plan participants or beneficiaries, or any company or account that is—

(A) established by a person that is eligible to establish and maintain such a plan under section 414(e) of title 26; and

(B) substantially all of the activities of which consist of—

(i) managing or holding assets contributed to such church plans or other assets which are permitted to be commingled with the assets of church plans under title 26; or

(ii) administering or providing benefits pursuant to church plans.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §3, 54 Stat. 797; Oct. 21, 1942, ch. 619, title I, §162(e), 56 Stat. 867; Pub. L. 89–485, §13(i), July 1, 1966, 80 Stat. 243; Pub. L. 91–547, §3(a), (b), Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1414; Pub. L. 94–210, title III, §308(c), Feb. 5, 1976, 90 Stat. 57; Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §102, title VII, §703, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2276, 2295; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §§604–606, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1260; Pub. L. 104–62, §2(a), Dec. 8, 1995, 109 Stat. 682; Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §209(a), (c), title V, §508(a), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3432, 3435, 3447; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(c)(2), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §221(c), Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1401; Pub. L. 108–359, §1(a), Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1666; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §986(c)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1936; Pub. L. 115–174, title V, §504, May 24, 2018, 132 Stat. 1362; Pub. L. 119–27, §17(b)(2), July 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 462.)

Amendment of Subsection (c)(3)

Pub. L. 119–27, §§17(b)(2), 20, July 18, 2025, 139 Stat. 462, 466, provided that, effective on the earlier of the date that is 18 months after July 18, 2025, or the date that is 120 days after the date on which the primary Federal payment stablecoin regulators issue any final regulations implementing Pub. L. 119–27, subsection (c)(3) of this section is amended by inserting "any permitted payment stablecoin issuer, as such term is defined in section 5901 of title 12;" after "therefor;". See 2025 Amendment note below.

Editorial Notes

Amendments

2025—Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 119–27 inserted "any permitted payment stablecoin issuer, as such term is defined in section 5901 of title 12;" after "therefor;".

2018—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 115–174, §504(1), inserted "(or, in the case of a qualifying venture capital fund, 250 persons)" after "one hundred persons" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(1)(C). Pub. L. 115–174, §504(2), added subpar. (C).

2010—Subsec. (c)(8). Pub. L. 111–203 substituted "[Repealed]" for text of par. (8) which read as follows: "Any company subject to regulation under the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935."

2004—Subsec. (c)(11). Pub. L. 108–359, which directed the substitution of "one or more of such trusts, government plans, or church plans, companies or accounts that are excluded from the definition of an investment company under paragraph (14) of this subsection" for "such trusts or government plans, or both", was executed by making the substitution for "such trusts or governmental plans, or both", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

1999—Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 106–102 inserted ", if—" and subpars. (A) to (C) before period at end.

1998—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted "paragraph (1)(C)" for "paragraph (3)" in introductory provisions.

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–290, §209(c)(1)–(5), designated existing introductory provisions as par. (1), redesignated former pars. (1) to (3) as subpars. (A) to (C), respectively, and designated existing concluding provisions as par. (2).

Subsec. (a)(2)(C). Pub. L. 104–290, §209(c)(6), substituted "which (i) are" for "which are" and added cl. (ii).

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 104–290, §209(a)(1), inserted after first sentence "Such issuer shall be deemed to be an investment company for purposes of the limitations set forth in subparagraphs (A)(i) and (B)(i) of section 80a–12(d)(1) of this title governing the purchase or other acquisition by such issuer of any security issued by any registered investment company and the sale of any security issued by any registered open-end investment company to any such issuer."

Subsec. (c)(1)(A). Pub. L. 104–290, §209(a)(2), inserted "and is or, but for the exception provided for in this paragraph or paragraph (7), would be an investment company," after "voting securities of the issuer," and struck out "unless, as of the date of the most recent acquisition by such company of securities of that issuer, the value of all securities owned by such company of all issuers which are or would, but for the

exception set forth in this subparagraph, be excluded from the definition of investment company solely by this paragraph, does not exceed 10 per centum of the value of the company's total assets. Such issuer nonetheless is deemed to be an investment company for purposes of section 80a–12(d)(1) of this title" after " (other than short-term paper)".

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 104–290, §209(a)(3), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), substituted "acting as broker, and acting as market intermediary," for "and acting as broker,", and added subpar. (B).

Subsec. (c)(7). Pub. L. 104–290, §209(a)(4), added par. (7) and struck out former par. (7) "Reserved."

Subsec. (c)(14). Pub. L. 104–290, §508(a), added par. (14).

1995—Subsec. (c)(10). Pub. L. 104–62 amended par. (10) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (10) read as follows: "Any company organized and operated exclusively for religious, educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, or reformatory purposes, no part of the net earnings of which inures to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual."

1987—Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 100–181, §604, inserted "or" after "therefor;" and struck out "; or any common trust fund or similar fund, established before June 22, 1936, by a corporation which is supervised or examined by State or Federal authority having supervision over banks, if a majority of the units of beneficial interest in such fund, other than units owned by charitable or educational institutions, are held under instruments providing for payment of income to one or more persons and of principal to another or others" after "guardian".

Subsec. (c)(7). Pub. L. 100–181, §605, substituted "Reserved." for "Any company (A) which is subject to regulation under section 314 of title 49, except that this exception shall not apply to a company which the Commission finds and by order declares to be primarily engaged, directly or indirectly, in the business of investing, reinvesting, owning, holding, or trading in securities, or (B) whose entire outstanding stock is owned or controlled by a company excepted under clause (A) hereof, if the assets of the controlled company consist substantially of securities issued by companies which are subject to regulation under section 314 of title 49."

Subsec. (c)(11). Pub. L. 100–181, §606(1), substituted "Internal Revenue Code of 1986" for "Internal Revenue Code of 1954" wherever appearing, which for purposes of codification was translated as "title 26" thus requiring no change in text.

Pub. L. 100–181, §606(2), (3), substituted "; or any governmental plan" for "or which holds only assets of governmental plans" and "trusts or governmental plans, or both" for "trusts".

1980—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 96–477, §102, designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), provided that beneficial ownership was to be deemed to be that of the holders of ten per cent of company's outstanding securities, other than short term paper, unless, as of the date of the most recent acquisition by such company of securities of that issuer, the value of all securities owned by such company of all issuers which were or would, but for the exception set forth in subpar. (A), be excluded from the definition of investment company solely by par. (1), did not exceed ten per cent of the value of the company's total assets, that such issuer nonetheless was deemed to be an investment company for purposes of section 80a–12(d)(1) of this title, and added subpar. (B).

Subsec. (c)(11). Pub. L. 96–477, §703, excluded from consideration as an investment company for purposes of this subchapter any employee's stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing trust which holds only assets of governmental plans described in section 77c(a)(2)(C) of this title, redesignated former cl. (B) as (C), and added cl. (B).

1976—Subsec. (c)(7). Pub. L. 94–210 designated existing provisions as cls. (A) and (B) and, as so designated, in cl. (A) provided for applicability to section 314 of title 49 and inserted exception to exception, in cl. (B) inserted provisions relating to companies regulated under section 314 of title 49 and made changes in phraseology to conform cl. to cl. (A), and struck out proviso relating to assets of controlled company.

1970—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(a), inserted "in good faith" after "paragraph" in second sentence.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(b)(1), struck out reference to subsec. (b) in introductory text.

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(b)(2), redesignated par. (5) as (4). See 1966 Amendment note with respect to repeal of former par. (4).

Subsec. (c)(5). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(b)(2), (3), redesignated par. (6) as (5) and inserted "redeemable securities," before "face-amount certificates". Former par. (5) redesignated (4).

Subsec. (c)(6). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(b)(2), redesignated par. (7) as (6), inserted reference to par. (4), and struck out reference to par. (6). Former par. (6) redesignated (5).

Subsec. (c)(7). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(b)(2), redesignated par. (9) as (7). Former par. (7) redesignated (6).

Subsec. (c)(8). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(b)(2), (4), redesignated par. (10) as (8), substituted "subject to regulation" for "with a registration in effect as a holding company", and struck out former par. (8) provision excluding as an investment company any company 90 per centum or more of the value of whose

investment securities are represented by securities of a single issuer included within a class of persons enumerated in pars. (5), (6), or (7) of this subsection.

Subsecs. (c)(9), (10). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(b)(2), redesignated pars. (11) and (12) as (9) and (10), respectively. Former pars. (9) and (10) redesignated (7) and (8).

Subsec. (c)(11). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(b)(2), (5), redesignated par. (13) as (11), substituted "requirements for qualification under section 401 of title 26 [I.R.C. 1954]" for "conditions of section 165 of title 26, as amended [I.R. 1939]", and inserted provisions for exclusion as an investment company any collective trust fund maintained by a bank consisting solely of assets of such trusts or any separate account the assets of which are derived from certain sources. Former par. (11) redesignated (9).

Subsecs. (c)(12) to (15). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(b)(2), redesignated pars. (14) and (15) as (12) and (13), respectively. Former pars. (12) and (13) redesignated (10) and (11).

1966—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 89–485 repealed provisions which exempt holding company affiliates granted a general voting permit by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System before 1940 and any such affiliates with a later voting permit concerning which determinations were made of being primarily engaged, directly or indirectly, in the business of holding the stock of, and managing or controlling, banks, banking associations, savings banks, or trust companies.

1942—Subsec. (c)(13). Act Oct. 31, 1942, inserted "as amended".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2025 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 119–27 effective on the earlier of the date that is 18 months after July 18, 2025, or the date that is 120 days after the date on which the primary Federal payment stablecoin regulators issue any final regulations implementing Pub. L. 119–27, see section 20 of Pub. L. 119–27, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5901 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Effective Date of 1999 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 106–102 effective 18 months after Nov. 12, 1999, see section 225 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Effective Date of 1996 Amendment

Amendment by section 209 of Pub. L. 104–290 effective on earlier of 180 days after Oct. 11, 1996, or date on which required rulemaking is completed, see section 209(e) of Pub. L. 104–290 set out as a note under section 80a–2 of this title.

Effective Date of 1995 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–62 applicable as defense to any claim in administrative and judicial actions pending on or commenced after Dec. 8, 1995, that any person, security, interest, or participation of type described in Pub. L. 104–62 is subject to the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, or any State statute or regulation preempted as provided in section 80a–3a of this title, except as specifically provided in such statutes, see section 7 of Pub. L. 104–62, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Effective Date of 1976 Amendment

Pub. L. 94–210, title III, §308(d)(2), (3), Feb. 5, 1976, 90 Stat. 57, as amended by Pub. L. 94–555, title II, §220(c), Oct. 19, 1976, 90 Stat. 2629, provided that:

"(2) The amendment made by subsection (b) of this section [amending section 78m of this title] shall not apply to any report by any person with respect to a fiscal year of such person which began before the date of enactment of this Act [Feb. 5, 1976].

"(3) The amendment made by subsection (c) of this section [amending this section] shall take effect on the 60th day after the date of enactment of this Act [Feb. 5, 1976]".

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Effective Date of 1942 Amendment

Act Oct. 21, 1942, ch. 619, title I, §162(d), 56 Stat. 866 (Revenue Act of 1942), as amended by act Dec. 17, 1943, ch. 346, §3, 57 Stat. 602, provided: "Taxable Years to Which Amendments Applicable.—The amendments made by this section [to this section and sections 22, 23, and 165 of Title 26, I.R.C. 1939] shall be applicable as to both the employer and employees only with respect to taxable years of the employer beginning after December 31, 1941, except that—

"(1) In the case of a stock bonus, pension, profit-sharing, or annuity plan in effect on or before September 1, 1942,

"(A) such a plan shall not become subject to the requirements of section 165(a)(3), (4), (5), and (6) [of Title 26, I.R.C. 1939] until the beginning of the first taxable year beginning after December 31, 1942.

"(B) such a plan shall be considered as satisfying the requirements of section 165(a), (3), (4), and (5) and (6) [of Title 26, I.R.C. 1939] for the period beginning with the beginning of the first taxable year following December 31, 1942, and ending December 31, 1944, if the provisions thereof satisfy such requirements by December 31, 1944, and if by that time such provisions are made effective for all purposes as of a date not later than January 1, 1944.

"(C) if the contribution of an employer to such a plan in the employer's taxable year beginning in 1942 exceeds the maximum amount deductible for such year under section 23(p)(1), as amended by this section, the amount deductible in such year shall be not less than the sum of—

"(i) the amount paid in such taxable year prior to September 1, 1942, and deductible under section 23(a) or 23(p) prior to amendment by this section, and

"(ii) with respect to the amount paid in such taxable year on or after September 1, 1942, that proportion of the amount deductible for the taxable year under section 23(p)(1), as amended by this section, which the number of months after August 31, 1942, in the taxable year bears to twelve.

"(2) In the case of a stock bonus, pension, profit sharing or annuity plan put into effect after September 1, 1942, such a plan shall be considered as satisfying the requirements of section 165(a)(3), (4), (5), and (6) [of Title 26, I.R.C. 1939] for the period beginning with the date such plan is put into effect and ending December 31, 1944, if the provisions thereof satisfy such requirements by December 31, 1944, and if by that time such provisions are made effective for all purposes as of a date not later than the effective date of such plan or January 1, 1944, whichever is the later."

Regulations

Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §209(d)(1), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3435, provided that: "Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 1996], the Commission shall prescribe rules to implement the requirements of section 3(c)(1)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(1)(B)), as amended by this section."

Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §209(d)(3), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3436, provided that: "Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 1996], the Commission shall prescribe rules pursuant to its authority under section 6 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–6] to permit the ownership of securities by knowledgeable employees of the issuer of the securities or an affiliated person without loss of the exception of the issuer under paragraph (1) or (7) of section 3(c) of that Act [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)] from treatment as an investment company under that Act [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.]."

Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §209(d)(4), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3436, provided that: "Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 1996], the Commission shall prescribe rules defining the term 'beneficial owner' for purposes of section 3(c)(7)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(7)(B)], as amended by this Act."

Protection of Church Employee Benefit Plans Under State Law

Pub. L. 104–290, title V, §508(f), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3448, provided that:

"(1) Registration requirements.—Any security issued by or any interest or participation in any church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(14)], as added by subsection (a) of this section, and any offer, sale, or purchase thereof, shall be exempt from any law of a State that requires registration or qualification of securities.

"(2) Treatment of church plans.—No church plan described in section 414(e) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 [26 U.S.C. 414(e)], no person or entity eligible to establish and maintain such a plan under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 [26 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], no company or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15

U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(14)], as added by subsection (a) of this section, and no trustee, director, officer, or employee of or volunteer for any such plan, person, entity, company, or account shall be required to qualify, register, or be subject to regulation as an investment company or as a broker, dealer, investment adviser, or agent under the laws of any State solely because such plan, person, entity, company, or account buys, holds, sells, or trades in securities for its own account or in its capacity as a trustee or administrator of or otherwise on behalf of, or for the account of, or provides investment advice to, for, or on behalf of, any such plan, person, or entity or any company or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as added by subsection (a) of this section."

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–3a. Protection of philanthropy under State law

(a) Registration requirements

A security issued by or any interest or participation in any pooled income fund, collective trust fund, collective investment fund, or similar fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 80a–3(c)(10)(B) of this title, and the offer or sale thereof, shall be exempt from any statute or regulation of a State that requires registration or qualification of securities.

(b) Treatment of charitable organizations

No charitable organization, or any trustee, director, officer, employee, or volunteer of a charitable organization acting within the scope of such person's employment or duties, shall be required to register as, or be subject to regulation as, a dealer, broker, agent, or investment adviser under the securities laws of any State because such organization or person buys, holds, sells, or trades in securities for its own account in its capacity as trustee or administrator of, or otherwise on behalf of or for the account of one or more of the following:

(1) a charitable organization;

(2) a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 80a–3(c)(10)(B) of this title; or

(3) a trust or other donative instrument described in section 80a–3(c)(10)(B) of this title, or the settlors (or potential settlors) or beneficiaries of any such trusts or other instruments.

(c) State action

Notwithstanding subsections (a) and (b), during the 3-year period beginning on December 8, 1995, a State may enact a statute that specifically refers to this section and provides prospectively that this section shall not preempt the laws of that State referred to in this section.

(d) Definitions

For purposes of this section—

(1) the term "charitable organization" means an organization described in paragraphs (1) through (5) of section 170(c) or section 501(c)(3) of title 26;

(2) the term "security" has the same meaning as in section 78c of this title; and

(3) the term "State" means each of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(Pub. L. 104–62, §6, Dec. 8, 1995, 109 Stat. 685.)

Editorial Notes

Codification

Section was enacted as part of the Philanthropy Protection Act of 1995, and not as part of the Investment Company Act of 1940 which comprises this subchapter.

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date

Section applicable as defense to any claim in administrative and judicial actions pending on or commenced after Dec. 8, 1995, that any person, security, interest, or participation of type described in Pub. L. 104–62 is subject to the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, or any State statute or regulation preempted as provided in this section, except as specifically provided in such statutes, see section 7 of Pub. L. 104–62, set out as an Effective Date of 1995 Amendment note under section 77c of this title.

§80a–4. Classification of investment companies

For the purposes of this subchapter, investment companies are divided into three principal classes, defined as follows:

(1) "Face-amount certificate company" means an investment company which is engaged or proposes to engage in the business of issuing face-amount certificates of the installment type, or which has been engaged in such business and has any such certificate outstanding.

(2) "Unit investment trust" means an investment company which (A) is organized under a trust indenture, contract of custodianship or agency, or similar instrument, (B) does not have a board of directors, and (C) issues only redeemable securities, each of which represents an undivided interest in a unit of specified securities; but does not include a voting trust.

(3) "Management company" means any investment company other than a face-amount certificate company or a unit investment trust.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §4, 54 Stat. 799.)

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–5. Subclassification of management companies

(a) Open-end and closed-end companies

For the purposes of this subchapter, management companies are divided into open-end and closed-end companies, defined as follows:

(1) "Open-end company" means a management company which is offering for sale or has outstanding any redeemable security of which it is the issuer.

(2) "Closed-end company" means any management company other than an open-end company.

(b) Diversified and non-diversified companies

Management companies are further divided into diversified companies and non-diversified companies, defined as follows:

(1) "Diversified company" means a management company which meets the following requirements: At least 75 per centum of the value of its total assets is represented by cash and cash items (including receivables), Government securities, securities of other investment companies, and other securities for the purposes of this calculation limited in respect of any one issuer to an amount not greater in value than 5 per centum of the value of the total assets of such management company and to not more than 10 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of such issuer.

(2) "Non-diversified company" means any management company other than a diversified company.

(c) Loss of status as diversified company

A registered diversified company which at the time of its qualification as such meets the requirements of paragraph (1) of subsection (b) shall not lose its status as a diversified company because of any subsequent discrepancy between the value of its various investments and the requirements of said paragraph, so long as any such discrepancy existing immediately after its acquisition of any security or other property is neither wholly nor partly the result of such acquisition.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §5, 54 Stat. 800; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §607, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1261.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1987—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 100–181 substituted "Closed-end" for "Close-end".

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–6. Exemptions

(a) Exemption of specified investment companies

The following investment companies are exempt from the provisions of this subchapter:

(1) Any company which since the effective date of this subchapter or within five years prior to such date has been reorganized under the supervision of a court of competent jurisdiction, if (A) such company was not an investment company at the commencement of such reorganization proceedings, (B) at the conclusion of such proceedings all outstanding securities of such company were owned by creditors of such company or by persons to whom such securities were issued on account of creditors' claims, and (C) more than 50 per centum of the voting securities of such company, and securities representing more than 50 per centum of the net asset value of such company, are currently owned beneficially by not more than twenty-five persons; but such exemption shall terminate if any security of which such company is the issuer is offered for sale or sold to the public after the conclusion of such proceedings by the issuer or by or through any underwriter. For the purposes of this paragraph, any new company organized as part of the reorganization shall be deemed the same company as its predecessor; and beneficial ownership shall be determined in the manner provided in section 80a–3(c)(1) of this title.

(2) Any issuer as to which there is outstanding a writing filed with the Commission by the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation stating that exemption of such issuer from the provisions of this subchapter is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors and is necessary or appropriate by reason of the fact that such issuer holds or proposes to acquire any assets or any product of any assets which have been segregated (A) from assets of any company which at the filing of such writing is an insured institution within the meaning of section 1724(a) [1] of title 12, or (B) as a part of or in connection with any plan for or condition to the insurance of accounts of any company by said corporation or the conversion of any company into a Federal savings and loan association. Any such writing shall expire when canceled by a writing similarly filed or at the expiration of two years after the date of its filing, whichever first occurs; but said corporation may, nevertheless, before, at, or after the expiration of any such writing file another writing or writings with respect to such issuer.

(3) Any company which prior to March 15, 1940, was and now is a wholly-owned subsidiary of a registered face-amount certificate company and was prior to said date and now is organized and operating under the insurance laws of any State and subject to supervision and examination by the insurance commissioner thereof, and which prior to March 15, 1940, was and now is engaged, subject to such laws, in business substantially all of which consists of issuing and selling only to residents of such State and investing the proceeds from, securities providing for or representing participations or interests in intangible assets consisting of mortgages or other liens on real estate or notes or bonds secured thereby or in a fund or deposit of mortgages or other liens on real estate or notes or bonds secured thereby or having outstanding such securities so issued and sold.

(4)(A) Any company that is not engaged in the business of issuing redeemable securities, the operations of which are subject to regulation by the State in which the company is organized under a statute governing entities that provide financial or managerial assistance to enterprises doing business, or proposing to do business, in that State if —

(i) the organizational documents of the company state that the activities of the company are limited to the promotion of economic, business, or industrial development in the State through the provision of financial or managerial assistance to enterprises doing business, or proposing to do business, in that State, and such other activities that are incidental or necessary to carry out that purpose;

(ii) immediately following each sale of the securities of the company by the company or any underwriter for the company, not less than 80 percent of the securities of the company being offered in such sale, on a class-by-class basis, are held by persons who reside or who have a substantial business presence in that State;

(iii) the securities of the company are sold, or proposed to be sold, by the company or by any underwriter for the company, solely to accredited investors, as that term is defined in section 77b(a)(15) of this title, or to such other persons that the Commission, as necessary or appropriate in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors, may permit by rule, regulation, or order; and

(iv) the company does not purchase any security issued by an investment company or by any company that would be an investment company except for the exclusions from the definition of the term "investment company" under paragraph (1) or (7) of section 80a–3(c) of this title, other than—

(I) any debt security that meets such standards of credit-worthiness as the Commission shall adopt; or

(II) any security issued by a registered open-end investment company that is required by its investment policies to invest not less than 65 percent of its total assets in securities described in subclause (I) or securities that are determined by such registered open-end investment company to be comparable in quality to securities described in subclause (I).

(B) Notwithstanding the exemption provided by this paragraph, section 80a–9 of this title (and, to the extent necessary to enforce section 80a–9 of this title, sections 80a–37 through 80a–50 of this title) shall apply to a company described in this paragraph as if the company were an investment company registered under this subchapter.

(C) Any company proposing to rely on the exemption provided by this paragraph shall file with the Commission a notification stating that the company intends to do so, in such form and manner as the Commission may prescribe by rule.

(D) Any company meeting the requirements of this paragraph may rely on the exemption provided by this paragraph upon filing with the Commission the notification required by subparagraph (C), until such time as the Commission determines by order that such reliance is not in the public interest or is not consistent with the protection of investors.

(E) The exemption provided by this paragraph may be subject to such additional terms and conditions as the Commission may by rule, regulation, or order determine are necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(b) Exemption of employees' security company upon application; matters considered

Upon application by any employees' security company, the Commission shall by order exempt such company from the provisions of this subchapter and of the rules and regulations hereunder, if and to the extent that such exemption is consistent with the protection of investors. In determining the provisions to which such an order of exemption shall apply, the Commission shall give due weight, among other things, to the form of organization and the capital structure of such company, the persons by whom its voting securities, evidences of indebtedness, and other securities are owned and controlled, the prices at which securities issued by such company are sold and the sales load thereon, the disposition of the proceeds of such sales, the character of the securities in which such proceeds are invested, and any relationship between such company and the issuer of any such security.

(c) Exemption of persons, securities or any class or classes of persons as necessary and appropriate in public interest

The Commission, by rules and regulations upon its own motion, or by order upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any person, security, or transaction, or any class or classes of persons, securities, or transactions, from any provision or provisions of this subchapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder, if and to the extent that such exemption is necessary or appropriate in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors and the purposes fairly intended by the policy and provisions of this subchapter.

(d) Exemption of closed-end investment companies

The Commission, by rules and regulations or order, shall exempt a closed-end investment company from any or all provisions of this subchapter, but subject to such terms and conditions as may be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, if—

(1) the aggregate sums received by such company from the sale of all its outstanding securities, plus the aggregate offering price of all securities of which such company is the issuer and which it proposes to offer for sale, do not exceed $10,000,000, or such other amount as the Commission may set by rule, regulation, or order;

(2) no security of which such company is the issuer has been or is proposed to be sold by such company or any underwriter therefor, in connection with a public offering, to any person who is not a resident of the State under the laws of which such company is organized or otherwise created; and

(3) such exemption is not contrary to the public interest or inconsistent with the protection of investors.

(e) Application of certain specified provisions of subchapter to otherwise exempt companies

If, in connection with any rule, regulation, or order under this section exempting any investment company from any provision of section 80a–7 of this title, the Commission deems it necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors that certain specified provisions of this subchapter pertaining to registered investment companies shall be applicable in respect of such company, the provisions so specified shall apply to such company, and to other persons in their transactions and relations with such company, as though such company were a registered investment company.

(f) Exemption of closed-end company treated as business development company

Any closed-end company which—

(1) elects to be treated as a business development company pursuant to section 80a–53 of this title; or

(2) would be excluded from the definition of an investment company by section 80a–3(c)(1) of this title, except that it presently proposes to make a public offering of its securities as a business development company, and has notified the Commission, in a form and manner which the Commission may, by rule, prescribe, that it intends in good faith to

file, within 90 days, a notification of election to become subject to the provisions of sections 80a–54 through 80a–64 of this title,

shall be exempt from sections 80a–1 through 80a–52 of this title, except to the extent provided in sections 80a–58 through 80a–64 of this title.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §6, 54 Stat. 800; Proc. No. 2695, eff. July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1352; Pub. L. 86–70, §12(e), June 25, 1959, 73 Stat. 143; Pub. L. 86–624, §7(c), July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 412; Pub. L. 95–598, title III, §310(b), Nov. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 2676; Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §103, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2277; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §608, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1261; Pub. L. 104–290, title V, §§501, 502, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3444, 3445; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §939(c), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1886; Pub. L. 115–174, title V, §506(a), May 24, 2018, 132 Stat. 1363.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

For the effective date of this subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), see section 80a–52 of this title.

Section 1724 of title 12, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), was repealed by Pub. L. 101–73, title IV, §407, Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 363.

Amendments

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–174 redesignated pars. (2) to (5) as (1) to (4), respectively, and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "Any company organized or otherwise created under the laws of and having its principal office and place of business in Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, or any other possession of the United States; but such exemption shall terminate if any security of which such company is the issuer is offered for sale or sold after the effective date of this subchapter, by such company or an underwriter therefor, to a resident of any State other than the State in which such company is organized."

2010—Subsec. (a)(5)(A)(iv)(I). Pub. L. 111–203 substituted "meets such standards of credit-worthiness as the Commission shall adopt" for "is rated investment grade by not less than 1 nationally recognized statistical rating organization".

1996—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 104–290, §501, added par. (5).

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 104–290, §502, substituted "$10,000,000, or such other amount as the Commission may set by rule, regulation, or order" for "$100,000".

1987—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 100–181, §608(1), struck out reference to Canal Zone.

Subsec. (a)(2) to (5). Pub. L. 100–181, §608(2), redesignated pars. (3) to (5) as (2) to (4), respectively, and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "Any company for which, in a proceeding in any court of the United States or of a State, a receiver, trustee in a case under title 11, or similar officer had been appointed or elected prior to the effective date of this subchapter, and every such officer so appointed or elected prior to the effective date of this subchapter; but such exemption shall continue only so long as (A) the conduct of such company's business remains subject to the supervision of such court or officer thereof, and (B) such company does not sell exclusively for cash any security of which it is the issuer, except short-term paper and ordinary receiver's or trustee's certificates."

1980—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96–477 added subsec. (f).

1978—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 95–598 substituted "a case under title 11" for "bankruptcy".

1960—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 86–624 struck out reference to Hawaii.

1959—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 86–70 struck out reference to Alaska.

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2018 Amendment; Safe Harbor

Pub. L. 115–174, title V, §506(b), May 24, 2018, 132 Stat. 1363, provided that:

"(1) Effective date.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), the amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [May 24, 2018].

"(2) Safe harbor.—With respect to a company that is exempt under section 6(a)(1) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–6(a)(1)) on the day before the date of enactment of this Act, the amendment made by subsection (a) shall take effect on the date that is 3 years after the date of enactment of this Act.

"(3) Extension of safe harbor.—The Securities and Exchange Commission, by rule or regulation upon its own motion, or by order upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally, under section 6(c) of

the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–6(c)), further delay the effective date for a company described in paragraph (2) for a maximum of 3 years following the initial 3-year period if, before the end of the initial 3-year period, the Commission determines that such a rule, regulation, motion, or order is necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors."

[For definition of "company" as used in section 506(b) of Pub. L. 115–174, set out above, see section 2 of Pub. L. 115–174, set out as a Definitions note under section 5365 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 2 years after July 21, 2010, see section 939(g) of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 24a of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Effective Date of 1978 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 95–598 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 402(a) of Pub. L. 95–598, set out as an Effective Date note preceding section 101 of Title 11, Bankruptcy.

Transfer of Functions

Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation abolished and functions transferred, see sections 401 to 406 of Pub. L. 101–73, set out as a note under section 1437 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Investment Company Provisions Inapplicable to Certain Life Insurance Benefits Issued Prior to March 23, 1959

Subchapter inapplicable to certain life insurance benefits issued prior to Mar. 23, 1959, under certain conditions, see section 29 of Pub. L. 91–547, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1436, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§80a–7. Transactions by unregistered investment companies

(a) Prohibition of transactions in interstate commerce by companies

No investment company organized or otherwise created under the laws of the United States or of a State and having a board of directors, unless registered under section 80a–8 of this title, shall directly or indirectly—

(1) offer for sale, sell, or deliver after sale, by the use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, any security or any interest in a security, whether the issuer of such security is such investment company or another person; or offer for sale, sell, or deliver after sale any such security or interest, having reason to believe that such security or interest will be made the subject of a public offering by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce;

(2) purchase, redeem, retire, or otherwise acquire or attempt to acquire, by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, any security or any interest in a security, whether the issuer of such security is such investment company or another person;

(3) control any investment company which does any of the acts enumerated in paragraphs (1) and (2) of this subsection;

(4) engage in any business in interstate commerce; or

(5) control any company which is engaged in any business in interstate commerce.

The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to transactions of an investment company which are merely incidental to its dissolution.

(b) Prohibition of transactions in interstate commerce by depositors or trustees of companies

No depositor or trustee of or underwriter for any investment company, organized or otherwise created under the laws of the United States or of a State and not having a board of directors, unless such company is registered under section 80a–8 of this title or exempt under section 80a–6 of this title, shall directly or indirectly—

(1) offer for sale, sell, or deliver after sale, by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, any security or any interest in a security of which such company is the issuer; or offer for sale, sell, or deliver after sale any such security or interest, having reason to believe that such security or interest will be made the subject of a public offering by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce;

(2) purchase, redeem, or otherwise acquire or attempt to acquire, by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, any security or any interest in a security of which such company is the issuer; or

(3) sell or purchase for the account of such company, by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, any security or interest in a security, by whomever issued.

The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to transactions which are merely incidental to the dissolution of an investment company.

(c) Prohibition of transactions in interstate commerce by promoters of proposed investment companies

No promoter of a proposed investment company, and no underwriter for such a promoter, shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, directly or indirectly, to offer for sale, sell, or deliver after sale, in connection with a public offering, any preorganization certificate or subscription for such a company.

(d) Prohibition of transactions in interstate commerce by companies not organized under laws of the United States or a State; exceptions

No investment company, unless organized or otherwise created under the laws of the United States or of a State, and no depositor or trustee of or underwriter for such a company not so organized or created, shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, directly or indirectly, to offer for sale, sell, or deliver after sale, in connection with a public offering, any security of which such company is the issuer. Notwithstanding the provisions of this subsection and of section 80a–8(a) of this title, the Commission is authorized, upon application by an investment company organized or otherwise created under the laws of a foreign country, to issue a conditional or unconditional order permitting such company to register under this subchapter, and to make a public offering of its securities by use of the mails and means or instrumentalities of interstate commerce, if the Commission finds that, by reason of special circumstances or arrangements, it is both legally and practically feasible effectively to enforce the provisions of this subchapter against such company and that the issuance of such order is otherwise consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

(e) Disclosure by exempt charitable organizations

Each fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 80a–3(c)(10)(B) of this title shall provide, to each donor to such fund, at the time of the donation or within 90 days after December 8, 1995, whichever is later, written information describing the material terms of the operation of such fund.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §7, 54 Stat. 802; Pub. L. 104–62, §2(b), Dec. 8, 1995, 109 Stat. 683.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1995—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–62 added subsec. (e).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1995 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–62 applicable as defense to any claim in administrative and judicial actions pending on or commenced after Dec. 8, 1995, that any person, security, interest, or participation of type described in Pub. L. 104–62 is subject to the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, or any State statute or regulation preempted as provided in section 80a–3a of this title, except as specifically provided in such statutes, see section 7 of Pub. L. 104–62, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–8. Registration of investment companies

(a) Notification of registration; effective date of registration

Any investment company organized or otherwise created under the laws of the United States or of a State may register for the purposes of this subchapter by filing with the Commission a notification of registration, in such form as the Commission shall by rules and regulations prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. An investment company shall be deemed to be registered upon receipt by the Commission of such notification of registration.

(b) Registration statement; contents

Every registered investment company shall file with the Commission, within such reasonable time after registration as the Commission shall fix by rules and regulations, an original and such copies of a registration statement, in such form and containing such of the following information and documents as the Commission shall by rules and regulations prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors:

(1) a recital of the policy of the registrant in respect of each of the following types of activities, such recital consisting in each case of a statement whether the registrant reserves freedom of action to engage in activities of such type, and if such freedom of action is reserved, a statement briefly indicating, insofar as is practicable, the extent to which the registrant intends to engage therein: (A) the classification and subclassifications, as defined in sections 80a–4 and 80a–5 of this title, within which the registrant proposes to operate; (B) borrowing money; (C) the issuance of senior securities; (D) engaging in the business of underwriting securities issued by other persons; (E) concentrating investments in a particular industry or group of industries; (F) the purchase and sale of real estate and commodities, or either of them; (G) making loans to other persons; and (H) portfolio turn-over (including a statement showing the aggregate dollar amount of purchases and sales of portfolio securities, other than Government securities, in each of the last three full fiscal years preceding the filing of such registration statement);

(2) a recital of all investment policies of the registrant, not enumerated in paragraph (1), which are changeable only if authorized by shareholder vote;

(3) a recital of all policies of the registrant, not enumerated in paragraphs (1) and (2), in respect of matters which the registrant deems matters of fundamental policy;

(4) the name and address of each affiliated person of the registrant; the name and principal address of every company, other than the registrant, of which each such person is an officer, director, or partner; a brief statement of the business experience for the preceding five years of each officer and director of the registrant; and

(5) the information and documents which would be required to be filed in order to register under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], all securities (other than short-term paper) which the registrant has outstanding or proposes to issue.

(c) Alternative information

The Commission shall make provision, by permissive rules and regulations or order, for the filing of the following, or so much of the following as the Commission may designate, in lieu of the information and documents required pursuant to subsection (b):

(1) copies of the most recent registration statement filed by the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] and currently effective under such Act, or if the registrant has not filed such a statement, copies of a registration statement filed by the registrant under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.] and currently effective under such Act;

(2) copies of any reports filed by the registrant pursuant to section 78m or 78o(d) of this title; and

(3) a report containing reasonably current information regarding the matters included in copies filed pursuant to paragraphs (1) and (2) of this subsection, and such further information regarding matters not included in such copies as the Commission is authorized to require under subsection (b).

(d) Registration of unit investment trusts

If the registrant is a unit investment trust substantially all of the assets of which are securities issued by another registered investment company, the Commission is authorized to prescribe for the registrant, by rules and regulations or order, a registration statement which eliminates inappropriate duplication of information contained in the registration statement filed under this section by such other investment company.

(e) Failure to file registration statement or omissions of material fact

If it appears to the Commission that a registered investment company has failed to file the registration statement required by this section or a report required pursuant to section 80a–29 (a) or (b) of this title, or has filed such a registration statement or report but omitted therefrom material facts required to be stated therein, or has filed such a registration statement or report in violation of section 80a–33(b) of this title, the Commission shall notify such company by registered mail or by certified mail of the failure to file such registration statement or report, or of the respects in which such registration statement or report appears to be materially incomplete or misleading, as the case may be, and shall fix a date (in no event earlier than thirty days after the mailing of such notice) prior to which such company may file such registration statement or report or correct the same. If such registration statement or report is not filed or corrected within the time so fixed by the Commission or any extension thereof, the Commission, after appropriate

notice and opportunity for hearing, and upon such conditions and with such exemptions as it deems appropriate for the protection of investors, may by order suspend the registration of such company until such statement or report is filed or corrected, or may by order revoke such registration, if the evidence establishes—

(1) that such company has failed to file a registration statement required by this section or a report required pursuant to section 80a–29(a) or (b) of this title, or has filed such a registration statement or report but omitted therefrom material facts required to be stated therein, or has filed such a registration statement or report in violation of section 80a–33(b) of this title; and

(2) that such suspension or revocation is in the public interest.

(f) Cessation of existence as investment company

Whenever the Commission, on its own motion or upon application, finds that a registered investment company has ceased to be an investment company, it shall so declare by order and upon the taking effect of such order the registration of such company shall cease to be in effect. If necessary for the protection of investors, an order under this subsection may be made upon appropriate conditions. The Commission's denial of any application under this subsection shall be by order.

(g) Data standards for registration statements

(1) Requirement

The Commission shall, by rule, adopt data standards for all registration statements required to be filed with the Commission under this section, except that the Commission may exempt exhibits, signatures, and certifications from those data standards.

(2) Consistency

The data standards required under paragraph (1) shall incorporate, and ensure compatibility with (to the extent feasible), all applicable data standards established in the rules promulgated under section 5334 of title 12, including, to the extent practicable, by having the characteristics described in clauses (i) through (vi) of subsection (c)(1)(B) of such section 5334.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §8, 54 Stat. 803; Pub. L. 86–507, §1(14), June 11, 1960, 74 Stat. 201; Pub. L. 91–547, §3(c), Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1415; Pub. L. 117–263, div. E, title LVIII, §5821(b)(1), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3424.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsecs. (b)(5) and (c)(1), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsecs. (b)(5) and (c)(1), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified generally to 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

Words "such Act", referred to in subsec. (c)(1), mean the Securities Act of 1933 and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, respectively.

Amendments

2022—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 117–263 added subsec. (g).

1970—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(c)(1), substituted "all investment policies of the registrant" and "which are changeable only if authorized by shareholder vote" for "the policy of the registrant in respect of matters" and "which the registrant deems matters of fundamental policy and elects to treat as such", respectively. Former provisions are covered in par. (3).

Subsec. (b)(3) to (5). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(c)(2), (3), added par. (3) and redesignated former pars. (3) and (4) as (4) and (5), respectively.

1960—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 86–507 inserted "or by certified mail" after "registered mail".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Rule of Construction—No New Disclosure Requirements

Amendment by Pub. L. 117–263 not to be construed to require certain additional information to be collected or disclosed, see section 5826 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 77g of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–9. Ineligibility of certain affiliated persons and underwriters

(a) Persons deemed ineligible for service with investment companies, etc.; investment adviser

It shall be unlawful for any of the following persons to serve or act in the capacity of employee, officer, director, member of an advisory board, investment adviser, or depositor of any registered investment company, or principal underwriter for any registered open-end company, registered unit investment trust, or registered face-amount certificate company:

(1) any person who within 10 years has been convicted of any felony or misdemeanor involving the purchase or sale of any security or arising out of such person's conduct as an underwriter, broker, dealer, investment adviser, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, bank, transfer agent, credit rating agency, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], or as an affiliated person, salesman, or employee of any investment company, bank, insurance company, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act;

(2) any person who, by reason of any misconduct, is permanently or temporarily enjoined by order, judgment, or decree of any court of competent jurisdiction from acting as an underwriter, broker, dealer, investment adviser, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, bank, transfer agent, credit rating agency, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], or as an affiliated person, salesman, or employee of any investment company, bank, insurance company, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act, or from engaging in or continuing any conduct or practice in connection with any such activity or in connection with the purchase or sale of any security; or

(3) a company any affiliated person of which is ineligible, by reason of paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection, to serve or act in the foregoing capacities.

For the purposes of paragraphs (1) to (3) of this subsection, the term "investment adviser" shall include an investment adviser as defined in subchapter II of this chapter.

(b) Certain persons serving investment companies; administrative action of Commission

The Commission may, after notice and opportunity for hearing, by order prohibit, conditionally or unconditionally, either permanently or for such period of time as it in its discretion shall deem appropriate in the public interest, any person from serving or acting as an employee, officer, director, member of an advisory board, investment adviser or depositor of, or principal underwriter for, a registered investment company or affiliated person of such investment adviser, depositor, or principal underwriter, if such person—

(1) has willfully made or caused to be made in any registration statement, application or report filed with the Commission under this subchapter any statement which was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any such registration statement, application, or report any material fact which was required to be stated therein;

(2) has willfully violated any provision of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], or of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], or of subchapter II of this chapter, or of this subchapter, or of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], or of any rule or regulation under any of such statutes;

(3) has willfully aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured the violation by any other person of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], or of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], or of subchapter II of this chapter, or of this subchapter, or of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], or of any rule or regulation under any of such statutes;

(4) has been found by a foreign financial regulatory authority to have—

(A) made or caused to be made in any application for registration or report required to be filed with a foreign securities authority, or in any proceeding before a foreign securities authority with respect to registration, any statement that was at the time and in light of the circumstances under which it was made false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any application or report to a foreign securities authority any material fact that is required to be stated therein;

(B) violated any foreign statute or regulation regarding transactions in securities or contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market or any board of trade; or

(C) aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured the violation by any other person of any foreign statute or regulation regarding transactions in securities or contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market or any board of trade;

(5) within 10 years has been convicted by a foreign court of competent jurisdiction of a crime, however denominated by the laws of the relevant foreign government, that is substantially equivalent to an offense set forth in paragraph (1) of subsection (a); or

(6) by reason of any misconduct, is temporarily or permanently enjoined by any foreign court of competent jurisdiction from acting in any of the capacities, set forth in paragraph (2) of subsection (a), or a substantially equivalent foreign capacity, or from engaging in or continuing any conduct or practice in connection with any such activity or in connection with the purchase or sale of any security.

(c) Application of ineligible person for exemption

Any person who is ineligible, by reason of subsection (a), to serve or act in the capacities enumerated in such subsection, may file with the Commission an application for an exemption from the provisions of such subsection. The Commission shall by order grant such application, either unconditionally or on an appropriate temporary or other conditional basis, if it is established that the prohibitions of such subsection (a) as applied to such person, are unduly or disproportionately severe or that the conduct of such person has been such as not to make it against the public interest or protection of investors to grant such application.

(d) Money penalties in administrative proceedings

(1) Authority of Commission

(A) In general

In any proceeding instituted pursuant to subsection (b) against any person, the Commission may impose a civil penalty if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such penalty is in the public interest, and that such person—

(i) has willfully violated any provision of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], subchapter II of this chapter, or this subchapter, or the rules or regulations thereunder;

(ii) has willfully aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured such a violation by any other person; or

(iii) has willfully made or caused to be made in any registration statement, application, or report required to be filed with the Commission under this subchapter, any statement which was, at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any such registration statement, application, or report any material fact which was required to be stated therein; [1]

(B) Cease-and-desist proceedings

In any proceeding instituted pursuant to subsection (f) against any person, the Commission may impose a civil penalty if the Commission finds, on the record, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such person—

(i) is violating or has violated any provision of this subchapter, or any rule or regulation issued under this subchapter; or

(ii) is or was a cause of the violation of any provision of this subchapter, or any rule or regulation issued under this subchapter.

(2) Maximum amount of penalty

(A) First tier

The maximum amount of penalty for each act or omission described in paragraph (1) shall be $5,000 for a natural person or $50,000 for any other person.

(B) Second tier

Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), the maximum amount of penalty for each such act or omission shall be $50,000 for a natural person or $250,000 for any other person if the act or omission described in paragraph (1) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement.

(C) Third tier

Notwithstanding subparagraphs (A) and (B), the maximum amount of penalty for each such act or omission shall be $100,000 for a natural person or $500,000 for any other person if—

(i) the act or omission described in paragraph (1) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement; and

(ii) such act or omission directly or indirectly resulted in substantial losses or created a significant risk of substantial losses to other persons or resulted in substantial pecuniary gain to the person who committed the act or omission.

(3) Determination of public interest

In considering under this section whether a penalty is in the public interest, the Commission may consider—

(A) whether the act or omission for which such penalty is assessed involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement;

(B) the harm to other persons resulting either directly or indirectly from such act or omission;

(C) the extent to which any person was unjustly enriched, taking into account any restitution made to persons injured by such behavior;

(D) whether such person previously has been found by the Commission, another appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to have violated the Federal securities laws, State securities laws, or the rules of a self-regulatory organization, has been enjoined by a court of competent jurisdiction from violations of such laws or rules, or has been convicted by a court of competent jurisdiction of violations of such laws or of any felony or misdemeanor described in section 80b–3(e)(2) of this title;

(E) the need to deter such person and other persons from committing such acts or omissions; and

(F) such other matters as justice may require.

(4) Evidence concerning ability to pay

In any proceeding in which the Commission may impose a penalty under this section, a respondent may present evidence of the respondent's ability to pay such penalty. The Commission may, in its discretion, consider such evidence in determining whether such penalty is in the public interest. Such evidence may relate to the extent of such person's ability to continue in business and the collectability of a penalty, taking into account any other claims of the United States or third parties upon such person's assets and the amount of such person's assets.

(e) Authority to enter order requiring accounting and disgorgement

In any proceeding in which the Commission may impose a penalty under this section, the Commission may enter an order requiring accounting and disgorgement, including reasonable interest. The Commission is authorized to adopt rules, regulations, and orders concerning payments to investors, rates of interest, periods of accrual, and such other matters as it deems appropriate to implement this subsection.

(f) Cease-and-desist proceedings

(1) Authority of Commission

If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that any person is violating, has violated, or is about to violate any provision of this subchapter, or any rule or regulation thereunder, the Commission may publish its findings and enter an order requiring such person, and any other person that is, was, or would be a cause of the violation, due to an act or omission the person knew or should have known would contribute to such violation, to cease and desist from committing or causing such violation and any future violation of the same provision, rule, or regulation. Such order may, in addition to requiring a person to cease and desist from committing or causing a violation, require such person to comply, or to take steps to effect compliance, with such provision, rule, or regulation, upon such terms and conditions and within such time as the Commission may specify in such order. Any such order may, as the Commission deems appropriate, require future compliance or steps to effect future compliance, either permanently or for such period of time as the Commission may specify, with such provision, rule, or regulation with respect to any security, any issuer, or any other person.

(2) Hearing

The notice instituting proceedings pursuant to paragraph (1) shall fix a hearing date not earlier than 30 days nor later than 60 days after service of the notice unless an earlier or a later date is set by the Commission with the consent of any respondent so served.

(3) Temporary order

(A) In general

Whenever the Commission determines that the alleged violation or threatened violation specified in the notice instituting proceedings pursuant to paragraph (1), or the continuation thereof, is likely to result in significant dissipation or conversion of assets, significant harm to investors, or substantial harm to the public interest, including, but not limited to, losses to the Securities Investor Protection Corporation, prior to the completion of the proceeding, the Commission may enter a temporary order requiring the respondent to cease and desist from the violation or threatened violation and to take such action to prevent the violation or threatened violation and to prevent dissipation or conversion of assets, significant harm to investors, or substantial harm to the public interest as the Commission deems appropriate pending completion of such proceedings. Such an order shall be entered only after notice and opportunity for a hearing, unless the Commission, notwithstanding section 80a–39(a) of this title, determines that notice and hearing prior to entry would be impracticable or contrary to the public interest. A temporary order shall become effective upon service upon the respondent and, unless set aside, limited, or suspended by the Commission or a court of competent jurisdiction, shall remain effective and enforceable pending the completion of the proceedings.

(B) Applicability

This paragraph shall apply only to a respondent that acts, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct acted, as a broker, dealer, investment adviser, investment company, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, or transfer agent, or is, or was at the time of the alleged misconduct, an associated person of, or a person seeking to become associated with, any of the foregoing.

(4) Review of temporary orders

(A) Commission review

At any time after the respondent has been served with a temporary cease-and-desist order pursuant to paragraph (3), the respondent may apply to the Commission to have the order set aside, limited, or suspended. If the respondent has been served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing, the respondent may, within 10 days after the date on which the order was served, request a hearing on such application and the Commission shall hold a hearing and render a decision on such application at the earliest possible time.

(B) Judicial review

Within—

(i) 10 days after the date the respondent was served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered with a prior Commission hearing, or

(ii) 10 days after the Commission renders a decision on an application and hearing under subparagraph (A), with respect to any temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing,

the respondent may apply to the United States district court for the district in which the respondent resides or has its principal place of business, or for the District of Columbia, for an order setting aside, limiting, or suspending the effectiveness or enforcement of the order, and the court shall have jurisdiction to enter such an order. A respondent served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing may not apply to the court except after hearing and decision by the Commission on the respondent's application under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph.

(C) No automatic stay of temporary order

The commencement of proceedings under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph shall not, unless specifically ordered by the court, operate as a stay of the Commission's order.

(D) Exclusive review

Section 80a–42 of this title shall not apply to a temporary order entered pursuant to this section.

(5) Authority to enter order requiring accounting and disgorgement

In any cease-and-desist proceeding under subsection (f)(1), the Commission may enter an order requiring accounting and disgorgement, including reasonable interest. The Commission is authorized to adopt rules, regulations, and orders concerning payments to investors, rates of interest, periods of accrual, and such other matters as it deems appropriate to implement this subsection.

(g) Corporate or other trustees performing functions of investment advisers

For the purposes of this section, the term "investment adviser" includes a corporate or other trustee performing the functions of an investment adviser.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §9, 54 Stat. 805; Pub. L. 91–547, §4, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1415; Pub. L. 94–29, §28(6), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 99–571, title I, §102(l), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3220; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §609, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1261; Pub. L. 101–429, title III, §301, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 941; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, §205(a), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2718; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §222, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1401; Pub. L. 109–291, §4(b)(2)(B), Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1337; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §§929P(a)(3), 985(d)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1863, 1934.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (2) and (b)(2), (3), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2), (3) and (d)(1)(A)(i), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2), (3) and (d)(1)(A)(i), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified generally to 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

Amendments

2010—Subsec. (b)(4)(B). Pub. L. 111–203, §985(d)(2), inserted "or" at end.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 111–203, §929P(a)(3), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A) and inserted heading, inserted "that such penalty is in the public interest, and" after "opportunity for hearing," in introductory provisions, redesignated former subpars. (A) to (C) as cls. (i) to (iii), respectively, and

realigned margins, struck out concluding provisions which read "and that such penalty is in the public interest.", and added subpar. (B).

2006—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–291 inserted "credit rating agency," after "transfer agent," in pars. (1) and (2).

1999—Subsec. (a)(1), (2). Pub. L. 106–102 substituted "securities dealer, bank, transfer agent," for "securities dealer, transfer agent,".

1990—Subsec. (b)(4) to (6). Pub. L. 101–550 added pars. (4) to (6).

Subsecs. (d) to (f). Pub. L. 101–429, §301(1), (2), added subsecs. (d) to (f) and redesignated former subsec. (d) as (g).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 101–429, §301(3), which directed the striking out of "subsections (a) through (c) of" after "the purposes of", was executed by striking out "subsection (a) through (c) of" as the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 101–429, §301(1), redesignated subsec. (d) as (g).

1987—Subsec. (a)(1), (2). Pub. L. 100–181 amended pars. (1) and (2) generally. Prior to amendment, pars. (1) and (2) read as follows:

"(1) any person who within 10 years has been convicted of any felony or misdemeanor involving the purchase or sale of any security or arising out of such person's conduct as an underwriter, broker, dealer, investment adviser, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act, or as an affiliated person, salesman, or employee of any investment company, bank, insurance company, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act;

"(2) any person who, by reason of any misconduct, is permanently or temporarily enjoined by order, judgment, or decree of any court of competent jurisdiction from acting as an underwriter, broker, dealer, investment adviser, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act, or as an affiliated person, salesman, or employee of any investment company, bank, insurance company, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act, or from engaging in or continuing any conduct or practice in connection with any such activity or in connection with the purchase or sale of any security; or".

1986—Subsec. (a)(1), (2). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(l)(1), inserted pars. (1) and (2) and struck out former pars. (1) and (2) which read as follows:

"(1) any person who within ten years has been convicted of any felony or misdemeanor involving the purchase or sale of any security or arising out of such person's conduct as an underwriter, broker, dealer, or investment adviser, or as an affiliated person, salesman, or employee of any investment company, bank, or insurance company;

"(2) any person who, by reason of any misconduct, is permanently or temporarily enjoined by order, judgment, or decree of any court of competent jurisdiction from acting as an underwriter, broker, dealer, or investment adviser, or as an affiliated person, salesman, or employee of any investment company, bank, or insurance company, or from engaging in or continuing any conduct or practice in connection with any such activity or in connection with the purchase or sale of any security; or".

Subsec. (b)(2), (3). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(l)(2), (3), inserted reference to Commodity Exchange Act.

1975—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsec. (d).

1970—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91–547, §4(a), inserted "employee," before "officer" in introductory text.

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 91–547, §4(b), added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Effective Date of 1999 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 106–102 effective 18 months after Nov. 12, 1999, see section 225 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Effective Date of 1990 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

Effective Date of 1986 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78o–5 of this title.

Effective Date of 1975 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

[1] *So in original. The semicolon probably should be a period.*

§80a–10. Affiliations or interest of directors, officers, and employees

(a) Interested persons of company who may serve on board of directors

No registered investment company shall have a board of directors more than 60 per centum of the members of which are persons who are interested persons of such registered company.

(b) Employment and use of directors, officers, etc., as regular broker, principal underwriter, or investment banker

No registered investment company shall—

(1) employ as regular broker any director, officer, or employee of such registered company, or any person of which any such director, officer, or employee is an affiliated person, unless a majority of the board of directors of such registered company shall be persons who are not such brokers or affiliated persons of any of such brokers;

(2) use as a principal underwriter of securities issued by it any director, officer, or employee of such registered company or any person of which any such director, officer, or employee is an interested person, unless a majority of the board of directors of such registered company shall be persons who are not such principal underwriters or interested persons of any of such principal underwriters; or

(3) have as director, officer, or employee any investment banker, or any affiliated person of an investment banker, unless a majority of the board of directors of such registered company shall be persons who are not investment bankers or affiliated persons of any investment banker. For the purposes of this paragraph, a person shall not be deemed an affiliated person of an investment banker solely by reason of the fact that he is an affiliated person of a company of the character described in section 80a–12(d)(3)(A) and (B) of this title.

(c) Officers, directors, or employees of one bank or bank holding company as majority of board of directors of company; exceptions

No registered investment company shall have a majority of its board of directors consisting of persons who are officers, directors, or employees of any one bank (together with its affiliates and subsidiaries) or any one bank holding company (together with its affiliates and subsidiaries) (as such terms are defined in section 1841 of title 12) or any one savings and loan holding company, together with its affiliates and subsidiaries (as such terms are defined in section 1467a of title 12),,[1] except that, if on March 15, 1940, any registered investment company had a majority of its directors consisting of persons who are directors, officers, or employees of any one bank, such company may continue to have the same percentage of its board of directors consisting of persons who are directors, officers, or employees of such bank.

(d) Exception to limitation of number of interested persons who may serve on board of directors

Notwithstanding subsections (a) and (b)(2) of this section, a registered investment company may have a board of directors all the members of which, except one, are interested persons of the investment adviser of such company, or are officers or employees of such company, if—

(1) such investment company is an open-end company;

(2) such investment adviser is registered under subchapter II of this chapter and is engaged principally in the business of rendering investment supervisory services as defined in subchapter II;

(3) no sales load is charged on securities issued by such investment company;

(4) any premium over net asset value charged by such company upon the issuance of any such security, plus any discount from net asset value charged on redemption thereof, shall not in the aggregate exceed 2 per centum;

(5) no sales or promotion expenses are incurred by such registered company; but expenses incurred in complying with laws regulating the issue or sale of securities shall not be deemed sales or promotion expenses;

(6) such investment adviser is the only investment adviser to such investment company, and such investment adviser does not receive a management fee exceeding 1 per centum per annum of the value of such company's net assets averaged over the year or taken as of a definite date or dates within the year;

(7) all executive salaries and executive expenses and office rent of such investment company are paid by such investment adviser; and

(8) such investment company has only one class of securities outstanding, each unit of which has equal voting rights with every other unit.

(e) Death, disqualification, or resignation of directors as suspension of limitation provisions

If by reason of the death, disqualification, or bona fide resignation of any director or directors, the requirements of the foregoing provisions of this section or of section 80a–15(f)(1) of this title in respect of directors shall not be met by a registered investment company, the operation of such provision shall be suspended as to such registered company—

(1) for a period of thirty days if the vacancy or vacancies may be filled by action of the board of directors;

(2) for a period of sixty days if a vote of stockholders is required to fill the vacancy or vacancies; or

(3) for such longer period as the Commission may prescribe, by rules and regulations upon its own motion or by order upon application, as not inconsistent with the protection of investors.

(f) Officer, director, etc., of company acting as principal underwriter of security acquired by company

No registered investment company shall knowingly purchase or otherwise acquire, during the existence of any underwriting or selling syndicate, any security (except a security of which such company is the issuer) a principal underwriter of which is an officer, director, member of an advisory board, investment adviser, or employee of such registered company, or is a person (other than a company of the character described in section 80a–12(d)(3)(A) and (B) of this title) of which any such officer, director, member of an advisory board, investment adviser, or employee is an affiliated person, unless in acquiring such security such registered company is itself acting as a principal underwriter for the issuer. The Commission, by rules and regulations upon its own motion or by order upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any transaction or classes of transactions from any of the provisions of this subsection, if and to the extent that such exemption is consistent with the protection of investors.

(g) Advisory boards; restrictions on membership

In the case of a registered investment company which has an advisory board, such board, as a distinct entity, shall be subject to the same restrictions as to its membership as are imposed upon a board of directors by this section.

(h) Application of section to unincorporated registered management companies

In the case of a registered management company which is an unincorporated company not having a board of directors, the provisions of this section shall apply as follows:

(1) the provisions of subsection (a), as modified by subsection (e), shall apply to the board of directors of the depositor of such company;

(2) the provisions of subsections (b) and (c), as modified by subsection (e), shall apply to the board of directors of the depositor and of every investment adviser of such company; and

(3) the provisions of subsection (f) shall apply to purchases and other acquisitions for the account of such company of securities a principal underwriter of which is the depositor or an investment adviser of such company, or an affiliated person of such depositor or investment adviser.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §10, 54 Stat. 806; Pub. L. 91–547, §5, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1416; Pub. L. 94–29, §28(5), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 165; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §213(c), Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1398; Pub. L. 109–351, title IV, §401(c), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1973.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

2006—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 109–351 inserted "or any one savings and loan holding company, together with its affiliates and subsidiaries (as such terms are defined in section 1467a of title 12)," after "1841 of title 12)".

1999—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 106–102 substituted "bank (together with its affiliates and subsidiaries) or any one bank holding company (together with its affiliates and subsidiaries) (as such terms are defined in section 1841 of title 12), except" for "bank, except".

1975—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94–29 inserted reference to provisions of section 80a–15(f)(1) of this title.

1970—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91–547, §5(a), struck out introductory text "After one year from the effective date of this subchapter" and substituted "interested persons of such registered company" for "investment

advisers of, affiliated persons of an investment adviser of, or officers or employees of, such registered company".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91–547, §5(b)(1), struck out introductory text "After one year from the effective date of this subchapter," and substituted "No" for "no".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 91–547, §5(b)(2), substituted "interested" for "affiliated" in two places.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 91–547, §5(c), struck out introductory text "After the effective date of this subchapter", substituted "No", ", except that", "had a majority", and "such company" for "no", ": *Provided*, That", "shall have had a majority", and "such company", respectively, and inserted reference to employees where first appearing.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 91–547, §5(d), reenacted provisions except for substitution of "interested persons" for "affiliated persons" in introductory text, deletion of "such investment adviser" before "is engaged" in item (2), and substitution of "class of securities" for "class of stock" and "unit" for "share" in two places in item (8).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1999 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 106–102 effective 18 months after Nov. 12, 1999, see section 225 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Effective Date of 1975 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 91–547, see section 30 (introductory text and pars. (1) and (2)) of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

[1] *So in original.*

§80a–11. Offers to exchange securities

(a) Approval by Commission for exchanges of securities on basis other than relative net asset value

It shall be unlawful for any registered open-end company or any principal underwriter for such a company to make or cause to be made an offer to the holder of a security of such company or of any other open-end investment company to exchange his security for a security in the same or another such company on any basis other than the relative net asset values of the respective securities to be exchanged, unless the terms of the offer have first been submitted to and approved by the Commission or are in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may have prescribed in respect of such offers which are in effect at the time such offer is made. For the purposes of this section, (A) an offer by a principal underwriter means an offer communicated to holders of securities of a class or series but does not include an offer made by such principal underwriter to an individual investor in the course of a retail business conducted by such principal underwriter, and (B) the net asset value means the net asset value which is in effect for the purpose of determining the price at which the securities, or class or series of securities involved, are offered for sale to the public either (1) at the time of the receipt by the offeror of the acceptance of the offer or (2) at such later times as is specified in the offer.

(b) Application of section to offers pursuant to plan of reorganization

The provisions of this section shall not apply to any offer made pursuant to any plan of reorganization, which is submitted to and requires the approval of the holders of at least a majority of the outstanding shares of the class or series to which the security owned by the offeree belongs.

(c) Application of section to specific exchange offers

The provisions of subsection (a) shall be applicable, irrespective of the basis of exchange, (1) to any offer of exchange of any security of a registered open-end company for a security of a registered unit investment trust or registered face-amount certificate company; and (2) to any type of offer of exchange of the securities of registered unit investment trusts or registered face-amount certificate companies for the securities of any other investment company.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §11, 54 Stat. 808; Pub. L. 91–547, §6, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1417.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1970—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91–547 struck out item (1) designation of existing provisions and item (2) provision for nonapplication of this section to any offer made pursuant to the right of conversion, at the option of the holder, from one class or series into another class or series of securities issued by the same company upon such terms as are specified in the charter, certificate of incorporation, articles of association, by-laws, or trust indenture subject to which the securities to be converted were issued or are to be issued.

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–12. Functions and activities of investment companies

(a) Purchase of securities on margin; joint trading accounts; short sales of securities; exceptions

It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company, in contravention of such rules and regulations or orders as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors—

(1) to purchase any security on margin, except such short-term credits as are necessary for the clearance of transactions;

(2) to participate on a joint or a joint and several basis in any trading account in securities, except in connection with an underwriting in which such registered company is a participant; or

(3) to effect a short sale of any security, except in connection with an underwriting in which such registered company is a participant.

(b) Distribution by investment company of securities of which it is issuer

It shall be unlawful for any registered open-end company (other than a company complying with the provisions of section 80a–10(d) of this title) to act as a distributor of securities of which it is the issuer, except through an underwriter, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(c) Limitations on commitments as underwriter

It shall be unlawful for any registered diversified company to make any commitment as underwriter, if immediately thereafter the amount of its outstanding underwriting commitments, plus the value of its investments in securities of issuers (other than investment companies) of which it owns more than 10 per centum of the outstanding voting securities, exceeds 25 per centum of the value of its total assets.

(d) Limitations on acquisition by investment companies of securities of other specific businesses

(1)(A) It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company (the "acquiring company") and any company or companies controlled by such acquiring company to purchase or otherwise acquire any security issued by any other investment company (the "acquired company"), and for any investment company (the "acquiring company") and any company or companies controlled by such acquiring company to purchase or otherwise acquire any security issued by

any registered investment company (the "acquired company"), if the acquiring company and any company or companies controlled by it immediately after such purchase or acquisition own in the aggregate—

(i) more than 3 per centum of the total outstanding voting stock of the acquired company;

(ii) securities issued by the acquired company having an aggregate value in excess of 5 per centum of the value of the total assets of the acquiring company; or

(iii) securities issued by the acquired company and all other investment companies (other than treasury stock of the acquiring company) having an aggregate value in excess of 10 per centum of the value of the total assets of the acquiring company.

(B) It shall be unlawful for any registered open-end investment company (the "acquired company"), any principal underwriter therefor, or any broker or dealer registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], knowingly to sell or otherwise dispose of any security issued by the acquired company to any other investment company (the "acquiring company") or any company or companies controlled by the acquiring company, if immediately after such sale or disposition—

(i) more than 3 per centum of the total outstanding voting stock of the acquired company is owned by the acquiring company and any company or companies controlled by it; or

(ii) more than 10 per centum of the total outstanding voting stock of the acquired company is owned by the acquiring company and other investment companies and companies controlled by them.

(C) It shall be unlawful for any investment company (the "acquiring company") and any company or companies controlled by the acquiring company to purchase or otherwise acquire any security issued by a registered closed-end investment company, if immediately after such purchase or acquisition the acquiring company, other investment companies having the same investment adviser, and companies controlled by such investment companies, own more than 10 per centum of the total outstanding voting stock of such closed-end company.

(D) The provisions of this paragraph shall not apply to a security received as a dividend or as a result of an offer of exchange approved pursuant to section 80a–11 of this title or of a plan of reorganization of any company (other than a plan devised for the purpose of evading the foregoing provisions).

(E) The provisions of this paragraph shall not apply to a security (or securities) purchased or acquired by an investment company if—

(i) the depositor of, or principal underwriter for, such investment company is a broker or dealer registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], or a person controlled by such a broker or dealer;

(ii) such security is the only investment security held by such investment company (or such securities are the only investment securities held by such investment company, if such investment company is a registered unit investment trust that issues two or more classes or series of securities, each of which provides for the accumulation of shares of a different investment company); and

(iii) the purchase or acquisition is made pursuant to an arrangement with the issuer of, or principal underwriter for the issuer of, the security whereby such investment company is obligated—

(aa) either to seek instructions from its security holders with regard to the voting of all proxies with respect to such security and to vote such proxies only in accordance with such instructions, or to vote the shares held by it in the same proportion as the vote of all other holders of such security, and

(bb) in the event that such investment company is not a registered investment company, to refrain substituting such security unless the Commission shall have approved such substitution in the manner provided in section 80a–26 of this title.

(F) The provisions of this paragraph shall not apply to securities purchased or otherwise acquired by a registered investment company if—

(i) immediately after such purchase or acquisition not more than 3 per centum of the total outstanding stock of such issuer is owned by such registered investment company and all affiliated persons of such registered investment company; and

(ii) such registered investment company has not offered or sold after January 1, 1971, and is not proposing to offer or sell any security issued by it through a principal underwriter or otherwise at a public offering price which includes a sales load of more than 1½ per centum.

No issuer of any security purchased or acquired by a registered investment company pursuant to this subparagraph shall be obligated to redeem such security in an amount exceeding 1 per centum of such issuer's total outstanding securities during any period of less than thirty days. Such investment company shall exercise voting rights by proxy or otherwise with respect to any security purchased or acquired pursuant to this subparagraph in the manner prescribed by subparagraph (E) of this subsection.

(G)(i) This paragraph does not apply to securities of a registered open-end investment company or a registered unit investment trust (hereafter in this subparagraph referred to as the "acquired company") purchased or otherwise acquired by a registered open-end investment company or a registered unit investment trust (hereafter in this subparagraph referred to as the "acquiring company") if—

(I) the acquired company and the acquiring company are part of the same group of investment companies;

(II) the securities of the acquired company, securities of other registered open-end investment companies and registered unit investment trusts that are part of the same group of investment companies, Government securities, and short-term paper are the only investments held by the acquiring company;

(III) with respect to—

(aa) securities of the acquired company, the acquiring company does not pay and is not assessed any charges or fees for distribution-related activities, unless the acquiring company does not charge a sales load or other fees or charges for distribution-related activities; or

(bb) securities of the acquiring company, any sales loads and other distribution-related fees charged, when aggregated with any sales load and distribution-related fees paid by the acquiring company with respect to securities of the acquired company, are not excessive under rules adopted pursuant to section 80a–22(b) of this title or section 80a–22(c) of this title by a securities association registered under section 15A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78o–3], or the Commission;

(IV) the acquired company has a policy that prohibits it from acquiring any securities of registered open-end investment companies or registered unit investment trusts in reliance on this subparagraph or subparagraph (F); and

(V) such acquisition is not in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may from time to time prescribe with respect to acquisitions in accordance with this subparagraph, as necessary and appropriate for the protection of investors.

(ii) For purposes of this subparagraph, the term "group of investment companies" means any 2 or more registered investment companies that hold themselves out to investors as related companies for purposes of investment and investor services.

(H) For the purposes of this paragraph, the value of an investment company's total assets shall be computed as of the time of a purchase or acquisition or as closely thereto as is reasonably possible.

(I) In any action brought to enforce the provisions of this paragraph, the Commission may join as a party the issuer of any security purchased or otherwise acquired in violation of this paragraph, and the court may issue any order with respect to such issuer as may be necessary or appropriate for the enforcement of the provisions of this paragraph.

(J) The Commission, by rule or regulation, upon its own motion or by order upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any person, security, or transaction, or any class or classes of persons, securities, or transactions from any provision of this paragraph, if and to the extent that such exemption is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

(2) It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company and any company or companies controlled by such registered investment company to purchase or otherwise acquire any security (except a security received as a dividend or as a result of a plan of reorganization of any company, other than a plan devised for the purpose of evading the provisions of this paragraph) issued by any insurance company of which such registered investment company and any company or companies controlled by such registered company do not, at the time of such purchase or acquisition, own in the aggregate at least 25 per centum of the total outstanding voting stock, if such registered company and any company or companies controlled by it own in the aggregate, or as a result of such purchase or acquisition will own in the aggregate, more than 10 per centum of the total outstanding voting stock of such insurance company.

(3) It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company and any company or companies controlled by such registered investment company to purchase or otherwise acquire any security issued by or any other interest in the business of any person who is a broker, a dealer, is engaged in the business of underwriting, or is either an investment adviser of an investment company or an investment adviser registered under subchapter II of this chapter, unless (A) such person is a corporation all the outstanding securities of which (other than short-term paper, securities representing bank loans, and directors' qualifying shares) are, or after such acquisition will be, owned by one or more registered investment companies; and (B) such person is primarily engaged in the business of underwriting and distributing securities issued by other persons, selling securities to customers, or any one or more of such or related activities, and the gross income of such person normally is derived principally from such business or related activities.

(e) Acquisition of securities issued by corporations in business of underwriting, furnishing capital to industry, etc.

Notwithstanding any provisions of this subchapter, any registered investment company may hereafter purchase or otherwise acquire any security issued by any one corporation engaged or proposing to engage in the business of underwriting, furnishing capital to industry, financing promotional enterprises, purchasing securities of issuers for which no ready market is in existence, and reorganizing companies or similar activities; provided—

(1) That the securities issued by such corporation (other than short-term paper and securities representing bank loans) shall consist solely of one class of common stock and shall have been originally issued or sold for investment to registered investment companies only;

(2) That the aggregate cost of the securities of such corporation purchased by such registered investment company does not exceed 5 per centum of the value of the total assets of such registered company at the time of any purchase or acquisition of such securities; and

(3) That the aggregate paid-in capital and surplus of such corporation does not exceed $100,000,000.

For the purpose of paragraph (1) of section 80a–5(b) of this title any investment in any such corporation shall be deemed to be an investment in an investment company.

(f) Organization and ownership by one registered face-amount certificate company of all or part of capital stock of not more than two other face-amount certificate companies; limitations

Notwithstanding any provisions of this chapter, any registered face-amount certificate company may organize not more than two face-amount certificate companies and acquire and own all or any part of the capital stock thereof only if such stock is acquired and held for investment: *Provided*, That the aggregate cost to such registered company of all such stock so acquired shall not exceed six times the amount of the minimum capital stock requirement provided in subdivision (1) of subsection (a) of section 80a–28 of this title for a face-amount company organized on or after March 15, 1940: *And provided further*, That the aggregate cost to such registered company of all such capital stock issued by face-amount certificate companies organized or otherwise created under laws other than the laws of the United States or any State thereof shall not exceed twice the amount of the minimum capital stock requirement provided in subdivision (1) of subsection (a) of said section 80a–28 for a company organized on or after March 15, 1940. Nothing contained in this subsection shall be deemed to prevent the sale of any such stock to any other person if the original purchase was made by such registered face-amount certificate company in good faith for investment and not for resale.

(g) Exceptions to limitation on ownership by investment company of securities of insurance company

Notwithstanding the provisions of this section any registered investment company and any company or companies controlled by such registered company may purchase or otherwise acquire from another investment company or any company or companies controlled by such registered company more than 10 per centum of the total outstanding voting stock of any insurance company owned by any such company or companies, or may acquire the securities of any insurance company if the Commission by order determines that such acquisition is in the public interest because the financial condition of such insurance company will be improved as a result of such acquisition or any plan contemplated as a result thereof. This section shall not be deemed to prohibit the promotion of a new insurance company or the acquisition of the securities of any newly created insurance company by a registered investment company, alone or with other persons. Nothing contained in this section shall in any way affect or derogate from the powers of any insurance commissioner or similar official or agency of the United States or any State, or to affect the right under State law of any insurance company to acquire securities of any other insurance company or insurance companies.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §12, 54 Stat. 808; Pub. L. 91–547, §7, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1417; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §610, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1261; Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §202, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3426; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(c)(3), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §985(d)(3), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1934.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (d)(1)(B), (E)(i), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified generally to 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

Amendments

2010—Subsec. (d)(1)(J). Pub. L. 111–203 substituted "any provision of this paragraph" for "any provision of this subsection".

1998—Subsec. (d)(1)(G)(i)(III)(bb). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted "the acquired company" for "the acquired fund".

1996—Subsec. (d)(1)(D), (E). Pub. L. 104–290, §202(3), substituted "this paragraph" for "this paragraph (1)".

Subsec. (d)(1)(E)(iii). Pub. L. 104–290, §202(1)(A), struck out "in the event such investment company is not a registered investment company," after "(iii)".

Subsec. (d)(1)(E)(iii)(bb). Pub. L. 104–290, §202(1)(B), inserted "in the event that such investment company is not a registered investment company," after "(bb)".

Subsec. (d)(1)(F). Pub. L. 104–290, §202(3), substituted "this paragraph" for "this paragraph (1)".

Subsec. (d)(1)(G). Pub. L. 104–290, §202(2), (4), added subpar. (G). Former subpar. (G) redesignated (H).

Subsec. (d)(1)(H). Pub. L. 104–290, §202(3), substituted "this paragraph" for "this paragraph (1)".

Pub. L. 104–290, §202(2), redesignated subpar. (G) as (H). Former subpar. (H) redesignated (I).

Subsec. (d)(1)(I). Pub. L. 104–290, §202(3), substituted "this paragraph" for "this paragraph (1)" wherever appearing.

Pub. L. 104–290, §202(2), redesignated subpar. (H) as (I).

Subsec. (d)(1)(J). Pub. L. 104–290, §202(5), added subpar. (J).

1987—Subsec. (d)(1)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 100–181, §610(1), substituted "treasury" for "Treasury".

Subsec. (d)(1)(G). Pub. L. 100–181, §610(2), substituted "is reasonably possible" for "it reasonably possible".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 100–181, §610(3), substituted "thereof only" for "only thereof".

1970—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 91–547 substituted provisions designated as subpars. (A) to (C) and (E) to (H) for former introductory provisions reading "It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company and any company or companies controlled by such registered investment company to purchase or otherwise acquire after August 22, 1940, any security issued by or any other interest in the business of—" and subpar. (1) reading "any other investment company of which such registered investment company and company or companies controlled by such registered company shall not at the time of such purchase or acquisition own in the aggregate at least 25 per centum of the total outstanding voting stock, if such registered investment company and any company or companies controlled by it own in the aggregate or as a result of such purchase or acquisition will own in the aggregate more than 5 per centum of the total outstanding voting stock of such other investment company if the policy of such other investment company is the concentration of investments in a particular industry or group of industries, or more than 3 per centum of the total outstanding voting stock of such other investment company if the policy of such other investment company is not the concentration of investments in a particular industry or group of industries, except and cl. (B) exception reading "a security purchased with the proceeds of payments on periodic payment plan certificates, pursuant to the terms of the trust indenture under which such certificates are issued", cl. (A) of such subpar. (1) being incorporated in subpar. (D) of this par. (1).

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 91–547 incorporated existing introductory text and subpar. (2) provisions in provisions redesignated as par. (2) and struck out "after August 22, 1940," after "purchase or otherwise acquire".

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 91–547 incorporated existing introductory text and subpar. (3) provisions in provisions redesignated as par. (3) and struck out "after August 22, 1940," after "purchase or otherwise acquire".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–13. Changes in investment policy

(a) Prohibited actions for registered investment companies

No registered investment company shall, unless authorized by the vote of a majority of its outstanding voting securities—

(1) change its subclassification as defined in section 80a–5(a)(1) and (2) of this title or its subclassification from a diversified to a nondiversified company;

(2) borrow money, issue senior securities, underwrite securities issued by other persons, purchase or sell real estate or commodities or make loans to other persons, except in each case in accordance with the recitals of policy contained in its registration statement in respect thereto;

(3) deviate from its policy in respect of concentration of investments in any particular industry or group of industries as recited in its registration statement, deviate from any investment policy which is changeable only if authorized by shareholder vote, or deviate from any policy recited in its registration statement pursuant to section 80a–8(b)(3) of this title; or

(4) change the nature of its business so as to cease to be an investment company.

(b) Majority equivalent for common-law trusts

In the case of a common-law trust of the character described in section 80a–16(c) of this title, either written approval by holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of beneficial interest or the vote of a majority of such outstanding shares cast in person or by proxy at a meeting called for the purpose shall for the purposes of subsection (a) be deemed the equivalent of the vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities, and the provisions of paragraph (42) of section 80a–2(a) of this title as to a majority shall be applicable to the vote cast at such a meeting.

(c) Limitation on actions

(1) In general

Notwithstanding any other provision of Federal or State law, no person may bring any civil, criminal, or administrative action against any registered investment company, or any employee, officer, director, or investment adviser thereof, based solely upon the investment company divesting from, or avoiding investing in, securities issued by persons that the investment company determines, using credible information available to the public—

(A) conduct or have direct investments in business operations in Sudan described in section 3(d) of the Sudan Accountability and Divestment Act of 2007 (50 U.S.C. 1701 note); or

(B) engage in investment activities in Iran described in section 8532(c) of title 22.

(2) Applicability

(A) Rule of construction

Nothing in paragraph (1) shall be construed to create, imply, diminish, change, or affect in any way whether or not a private right of action exists under subsection (a) or any other provision of this chapter.

(B) Disclosures

Paragraph (1) shall not apply to a registered investment company, or any employee, officer, director, or investment adviser thereof, unless the investment company makes disclosures in accordance with regulations prescribed by the Commission.

(3) Person defined

For purposes of this subsection the term "person" includes the Federal Government and any State or political subdivision of a State.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §13, 54 Stat. 811; Pub. L. 91–547, §§2(b), 3(d), Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1414, 1415; Pub. L. 94–29, §28(4), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 165; Pub. L. 110–174, §4(a), Dec. 31, 2007, 121 Stat. 2519; Pub. L. 111–195, title II, §§203(a), 205(b)(1), July 1, 2010, 124 Stat. 1343, 1345.)

Amendment of Section

For termination of subsection (c)(1)(B) of this section, see section 8551(a) of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse.

For termination of amendment by section 12 of Pub. L. 110–174, see Termination Date of 2007 Amendment note below.

Editorial Notes

References in Text

Section 3(d) of the Sudan Accountability and Divestment Act of 2007, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(A), is section 3(d) of Pub. L. 110–174, which is set out in a note under section 1701 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

Amendments

2010—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 111–195, §203(a), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Notwithstanding any other provision of Federal or State law, no person may bring any civil, criminal, or administrative action against any registered investment company, or any employee, officer, director, or investment adviser thereof, based solely upon the investment company divesting from, or avoiding investing in, securities issued by persons that the investment company determines, using credible information that is available to the public, conduct or have direct investments in business operations in Sudan described in section 3(d) of the Sudan Accountability and Divestment Act of 2007."

Subsec. (c)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–195, §205(b)(1), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Paragraph (1) does not prevent a person from bringing an action based on a breach of a fiduciary duty owed to that person with respect to a divestment or non-investment decision, other than as described in paragraph (1)."

2007—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 110–174, §§4(a), 12, temporarily added subsec. (c). See Termination Date of 2007 Amendment note below.

1975—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29 substituted "section 80a–16(c) of this title" for "subsection (b) of section 80a–16 of this title".

1970—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 91–547, §3(d), prohibited deviation from any investment policy which is changeable only if authorized by shareholder vote, substituted "section 8(b)(3)" for "section 8(b)(2)", and in the latter deviation provision struck out "fundamental" before "policy".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91–547, §2(b), substituted reference to "paragraph (42)" for "paragraph (40)".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Pub. L. 111–195, title II, §205(b)(2), July 1, 2010, 124 Stat. 1345, provided that: "The amendment made by paragraph (1) [amending this section] shall apply as if included in the Sudan Accountability and Divestment Act of 2007 (Public Law 110–174; 50 U.S.C. 1701 note)."

Termination Date of 2007 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 110–174 to terminate 30 days after the date on which the President has certified to Congress that the Government of Sudan has honored certain commitments, see section 12 of Pub. L. 110–174, set out in a note under section 1701 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

Effective Date of 1975 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

SEC Regulations

Pub. L. 111–195, title II, §203(b), July 1, 2010, 124 Stat. 1344, provided that: "Not later than 120 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [July 1, 2010], the Securities and Exchange Commission shall issue any revisions the Commission determines to be necessary to the regulations requiring disclosure by each registered investment company that divests itself of securities in accordance with section 13(c) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–13(c)] to include divestments of securities in accordance with paragraph (1)(B) of such section, as added by subsection (a) of this section."

§80a–14. Size of investment companies

(a) Public offerings

No registered investment company organized after August 22, 1940, and no principal underwriter for such a company, shall make a public offering of securities of which such company is the issuer, unless—

(1) such company has a net worth of at least $100,000;

(2) such company has previously made a public offering of its securities, and at the time of such offering had a net worth of at least $100,000; or

(3) provision is made in connection with and as a condition of the registration of such securities under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] which in the opinion of the Commission adequately insures (A) that after the effective date of such registration statement such company will not issue any security or receive any proceeds of any subscription for any security until firm agreements have been made with such company by not more than twenty-five responsible persons to purchase from it securities to be issued by it for an aggregate net amount which plus the then net worth of the company, if any, will equal at least $100,000; (B) that said aggregate net amount will be paid in to such company before any subscriptions for such securities will be accepted from any persons in excess of twenty-five; (C) that arrangements will be made whereby any proceeds so paid in, as well as any sales load, will be refunded to any subscriber on demand without any deduction, in the event that the net proceeds so received by the company do not result in the company having a net worth of at least $100,000 within ninety days after such registration statement becomes effective.

At any time after the occurrence of the event specified in clause (C) of paragraph (3) of this subsection the Commission may issue a stop order suspending the effectiveness of the registration statement of such securities under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] and may suspend or revoke the registration of such company under this subchapter.

(b) Study on effects of size

The Commission is authorized, at such times as it deems that any substantial further increase in size of investment companies creates any problem involving the protection of investors or the public interest, to make a study and investigation of the effects of size on the investment policy of investment companies and on security markets, on concentration of control of wealth and industry, and on companies in which investment companies are interested, and from time to time to report the results of its studies and investigations and its recommendations to the Congress.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §14, 54 Stat. 811.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (a), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–15. Contracts of advisers and underwriters

(a) Written contract to serve or act as investment adviser; contents

It shall be unlawful for any person to serve or act as investment adviser of a registered investment company, except pursuant to a written contract, which contract, whether with such registered company or with an investment adviser of such registered company, has been approved by the vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of such registered company, and—

(1) precisely describes all compensation to be paid thereunder;

(2) shall continue in effect for a period more than two years from the date of its execution, only so long as such continuance is specifically approved at least annually by the board of directors or by vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of such company;

(3) provides, in substance, that it may be terminated at any time, without the payment of any penalty, by the board of directors of such registered company or by vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of such company on not more than sixty days' written notice to the investment adviser; and

(4) provides, in substance, for its automatic termination in the event of its assignment.

(b) Written contract with company for sale by principal underwriter of security of which company is issuer; contents

It shall be unlawful for any principal underwriter for a registered open-end company to offer for sale, sell, or deliver after sale any security of which such company is the issuer, except pursuant to a written contract with such company, which contract—

(1) shall continue in effect for a period more than two years from the date of its execution, only so long as such continuance is specifically approved at least annually by the board of directors or by vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of such company; and

(2) provides, in substance, for its automatic termination in the event of its assignment.

(c) Approval of contract to undertake service as investment adviser or principal underwriter by majority of noninterested directors

In addition to the requirements of subsections (a) and (b) of this section, it shall be unlawful for any registered investment company having a board of directors to enter into, renew, or perform any contract or agreement, written or oral, whereby a person undertakes regularly to serve or act as investment adviser of or principal underwriter for such company, unless the terms of such contract or agreement and any renewal thereof have been approved by the vote of a majority of directors, who are not parties to such contract or agreement or interested persons of any such party, cast in person at a meeting called for the purpose of voting on such approval. It shall be the duty of the directors of a registered investment company to request and evaluate, and the duty of an investment adviser to such company to furnish, such information as may reasonably be necessary to evaluate the terms of any contract whereby a person undertakes regularly to serve or act as investment adviser of such company. It shall be unlawful for the directors of a registered investment company, in connection with their evaluation of the terms of any contract whereby a person undertakes regularly to serve or act as investment adviser of such company, to take into account the purchase price or

other consideration any person may have paid in connection with a transaction of the type referred to in paragraph (1), (3), or (4) of subsection (f).

(d) Equivalent of vote of majority of outstanding voting securities in case of common-law trust

In the case of a common-law trust of the character described in section 80a–16(c) of this title, either written approval by holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of beneficial interest or the vote of a majority of such outstanding shares cast in person or by proxy at a meeting called for the purpose shall for the purposes of this section be deemed the equivalent of the vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities, and the provisions of paragraph (42) of section 80a–2(a) of this title as to a majority shall be applicable to the vote cast at such a meeting.

(e) Exemption of advisory boards or members from provisions of this section

Nothing contained in this section shall be deemed to require or contemplate any action by an advisory board of any registered company or by any of the members of such a board.

(f) Receipt of benefits by investment adviser from sale of securities or other interest in such investment adviser resulting in assignment of investment advisory contract

(1) An investment adviser, or a corporate trustee performing the functions of an investment adviser, of a registered investment company or an affiliated person of such investment adviser or corporate trustee may receive any amount or benefit in connection with a sale of securities of, or a sale of any other interest in, such investment adviser or corporate trustee which results in an assignment of an investment advisory contract with such company or the change in control of or identity of such corporate trustee, if—

(A) for a period of three years after the time of such action, at least 75 per centum of the members of the board of directors of such registered company or such corporate trustee (or successor thereto, by reorganization or otherwise) are not (i) interested persons of the investment adviser of such company or such corporate trustee, or (ii) interested persons of the predecessor investment adviser or such corporate trustee; and

(B) there is not imposed an unfair burden on such company as a result of such transaction or any express or implied terms, conditions, or understandings applicable thereto.

(2)(A) For the purpose of paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection, interested persons of a corporate trustee shall be determined in accordance with section 80a–2(a)(19)(B) of this title: *Provided*, That no person shall be deemed to be an interested person of a corporate trustee solely by reason of (i) his being a member of its board of directors or advisory board or (ii) his membership in the immediate family of any person specified in clause (i) of this subparagraph.

(B) For the purpose of paragraph (1)(B) of this subsection, an unfair burden on a registered investment company includes any arrangement, during the two-year period after the date on which any such transaction occurs, whereby the investment adviser or corporate trustee or predecessor or successor investment advisers or corporate trustee or any interested person of any such adviser or any such corporate trustee receives or is entitled to receive any compensation directly or indirectly (i) from any person in connection with the purchase or sale of securities or other property to, from, or on behalf of such company, other than bona fide ordinary compensation as principal underwriter for such company, or (ii) from such company or its security holders for other than bona fide investment advisory or other services.

(3) If—

(A) an assignment of an investment advisory contract with a registered investment company results in a successor investment adviser to such company, or if there is a change in control of or identity of a corporate trustee of a registered investment company, and such adviser or trustee is then an investment adviser or corporate trustee with respect to other assets substantially greater in amount than the amount of assets of such company, or

(B) as a result of a merger of, or a sale of substantially all the assets by, a registered investment company with or to another registered investment company with assets substantially greater in amount, a transaction occurs which would be subject to paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection,

such discrepancy in size of assets shall be considered by the Commission in determining whether or to what extent an application under section 80a–6(c) of this title for exemption from the provisions of paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection should be granted.

(4) Paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection shall not apply to a transaction in which a controlling block of outstanding voting securities of an investment adviser to a registered investment company or of a corporate trustee performing the functions of an investment adviser to a registered investment company is—

(A) distributed to the public and in which there is, in fact, no change in the identity of the persons who control such investment adviser or corporate trustee, or

(B) transferred to the investment adviser or the corporate trustee, or an affiliated person or persons of such investment adviser or corporate trustee, or is transferred from the investment adviser or corporate trustee to an affiliated person or persons of the investment adviser or corporate trustee: *Provided*, That (i) each transferee (other than such adviser or trustee) is a natural person and (ii) the transferees (other than such adviser or trustee) owned in the aggregate more than 25 per centum of such voting securities for a period of at least six months prior to such transfer.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §15, 54 Stat. 812; Pub. L. 91–547, §8, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1419; Pub. L. 94–29, §28(1), (2), (4), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 164, 165; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §611, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1261.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1987—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100–181, §611(1), substituted "paragraph (42)" for "paragraph (40)".

Subsec. (f)(3)(B). Pub. L. 100–181, §611(2), substituted a comma for the period at end.

1975—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94–29, §28(2), inserted provisions making it unlawful for the directors of a registered investment company, in connection with their evaluation of the terms of any contract whereby a person undertakes regularly to serve or act as investment adviser of such company, to take into account the purchase price or other consideration any person may have paid in connection with a transaction of the type referred to in paragraph (1), (3), or (4) of subsec. (f).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94–29, §28(4), substituted "section 80a–16(c) of this title" for "subsection (b) of section 80a–16 of this title".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94–29, §28(1), added subsec. (f).

1970—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91–547, §8(a), struck out introductory phrase "After one year from the effective date of this subchapter" and "unless in effect prior to March 15, 1940," before "has been approved", and "by the investment adviser" after "assignment" in item (4), and substituted "It" for "it".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91–547, §8(b), struck out introductory phrase "After one year from the effective date of this subchapter," and concluding phrase ", unless in effect prior to March 15, 1940" after "which contract" before item (1), struck out "by such underwriter" after "assignment" in item (2), and substituted "It" for "it".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 91–547, §8(c), made it the duty of the directors of a registered investment company to request and evaluate, and the duty of an investment adviser to such company to furnish, such information as may reasonably be necessary to evaluate the terms of any contract whereby a person undertakes regularly to serve or act as investment adviser of such company, substituted "interested persons" for "affiliated persons", and struck out "except a written agreement which was in effect prior to March 15, 1940," after "written or oral,", item (1) designation following "have been approved" and item "or (2) by the vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of such company" after "any such party,", and inserted "the vote" in phrase "by the vote of a majority", and provision respecting voting "cast in person at a meeting called for the purpose of voting on such approval".

Subsecs. (d) to (f). Pub. L. 91–547, §8(d), redesignated subsecs. (e) and (f) as (d) and (e), respectively, and struck out former subsec. (d) which prohibited any person after March 15, 1945, from acting as investment adviser to, or principal underwriter for, any registered investment company pursuant to a written contract in effect prior to March 15, 1940, unless such contract was renewed prior to March 15, 1945, in such form as to make it comply with subsecs. (a) or (b).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1975 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective on expiration of one year after Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30(1) of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

§80a–16. Board of directors

(a) Election of directors

No person shall serve as a director of a registered investment company unless elected to that office by the holders of the outstanding voting securities of such company, at an annual or a special meeting duly called for that purpose; except that vacancies occurring between such meetings may be filled in any otherwise legal manner if immediately after filling any such vacancy at least two-thirds of the directors then holding office shall have been elected to such office by the holders of the outstanding voting securities of the company at such an annual or special meeting. In the event that at any time less than a majority of the directors of such company holding office at that time were so elected by the holders of the outstanding voting securities, the board of directors or proper officer of such company shall forthwith cause to be held as promptly as possible and in any event within sixty days a meeting of such holders for the

purpose of electing directors to fill any existing vacancies in the board of directors unless the Commission shall by order extend such period. The foregoing provisions of this subsection shall not apply to members of an advisory board.

Nothing herein shall, however, preclude a registered investment company from dividing its directors into classes if its charter, certificate of incorporation, articles of association, by-laws, trust indenture, or other instrument or the law under which it is organized, so provides and prescribes the tenure of office of the several classes: *Provided*, That no class shall be elected for a shorter period than one year or for a longer period than five years and the term of office of at least one class shall expire each year.

(b) Term vacancies

Any vacancy on the board of directors of a registered investment company which occurs in connection with compliance with section 80a–15(f)(1)(A) of this title and which must be filled by a person who is not an interested person of either party to a transaction subject to section 80a–15(f)(1)(A) of this title shall be filled only by a person (1) who has been selected and proposed for election by a majority of the directors of such company who are not such interested persons, and (2) who has been elected by the holders of the outstanding voting securities of such company, except that in the case of the death, disqualification, or bona fide resignation of a director selected and elected pursuant to clauses (1) and (2) of this subsection (b), the vacancy created thereby may be filled as provided in subsection (a).

(c) Trustees of common-law trusts

The foregoing provisions of this section shall not apply to a common-law trust existing on August 22, 1940, under an indenture of trust which does not provide for the election of trustees by the shareholders. No natural person shall serve as trustee of such a trust, which is registered as an investment company, after the holders of record of not less than two-thirds of the outstanding shares of beneficial interests in such trust have declared that he be removed from that office either by declaration in writing filed with the custodian of the securities of the trust or by votes cast in person or by proxy at a meeting called for the purpose. Solicitation of such a declaration shall be deemed a solicitation of a proxy within the meaning of section 80a–20(a) of this title.

The trustees of such a trust shall promptly call a meeting of shareholders for the purpose of voting upon the question of removal of any such trustee or trustees when requested in writing so to do by the record holders of not less than 10 per centum of the outstanding shares.

Whenever ten or more shareholders of record who have been such for at least six months preceding the date of application, and who hold in the aggregate either shares having a net asset value of at least $25,000 or at least 1 per centum of the outstanding shares, whichever is less, shall apply to the trustees in writing, stating that they wish to communicate with other shareholders with a view to obtaining signatures to a request for a meeting pursuant to this subsection and accompanied by a form of communication and request which they wish to transmit, the trustees shall within five business days after receipt of such application either—

(1) afford to such applicants access to a list of the names and addresses of all shareholders as recorded on the books of the trust; or

(2) inform such applicants as to the approximate number of shareholders of record, and the approximate cost of mailing to them the proposed communication and form of request.

If the trustees elect to follow the course specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection the trustees, upon the written request of such applicants, accompanied by a tender of the material to be mailed and of the reasonable expenses of mailing, shall, with reasonable promptness, mail such material to all shareholders of record at their addresses as recorded on the books, unless within five business days after such tender the trustees shall mail to such applicants and file with the Commission, together with a copy of the material to be mailed, a written statement signed by at least a majority of the trustees to the effect that in their opinion either such material contains untrue statements of fact or omits to state facts necessary to make the statements contained therein not misleading, or would be in violation of applicable law, and specifying the basis of such opinion.

After opportunity for hearing upon the objections specified in the written statement so filed, the Commission may, and if demanded by the trustees or by such applicants shall, enter an order either sustaining one or more of such objections or refusing to sustain any of them. If the Commission shall enter an order refusing to sustain any of such objections, or if, after the entry of an order sustaining one or more of such objections, the Commission shall find, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that all objections so sustained have been met, and shall enter an order so declaring, the trustees shall mail copies of such material to all shareholders with reasonable promptness after the entry of such order and the renewal of such tender.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §16, 54 Stat. 813; Pub. L. 94–29, §28(3), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 165.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1975—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsec. (b), redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c), and substituted "The foregoing provisions of this section" for "The provisions of subsection (a) of this section" in first sentence.

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1975 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–17. Transactions of certain affiliated persons and underwriters

(a) Prohibited transactions

It shall be unlawful for any affiliated person or promoter of or principal underwriter for a registered investment company (other than a company of the character described in section 80a–12(d)(3)(A) and (B) of this title), or any affiliated person of such a person, promoter, or principal underwriter, acting as principal—

(1) knowingly to sell any security or other property to such registered company or to any company controlled by such registered company, unless such sale involves solely (A) securities of which the buyer is the issuer, (B) securities of which the seller is the issuer and which are part of a general offering to the holders of a class of its securities, or (C) securities deposited with the trustee of a unit investment trust or periodic payment plan by the depositor thereof;

(2) knowingly to purchase from such registered company, or from any company controlled by such registered company, any security or other property (except securities of which the seller is the issuer);

(3) to borrow money or other property from such registered company or from any company controlled by such registered company (unless the borrower is controlled by the lender) except as permitted in section 80a–21(b) of this title; or

(4) to loan money or other property to such registered company, or to any company controlled by such registered company, in contravention of such rules, regulations, or orders as the Commission may, after consultation with and taking into consideration the views of the Federal banking agencies (as defined in section 1813 of title 12), prescribe or issue consistent with the protection of investors.

(b) Application for exemption of proposed transaction from certain restrictions

Notwithstanding subsection (a), any person may file with the Commission an application for an order exempting a proposed transaction of the applicant from one or more provisions of said subsection. The Commission shall grant such application and issue such order of exemption if evidence establishes that—

(1) the terms of the proposed transaction, including the consideration to be paid or received, are reasonable and fair and do not involve overreaching on the part of any person concerned;

(2) the proposed transaction is consistent with the policy of each registered investment company concerned, as recited in its registration statement and reports filed under this subchapter; and

(3) the proposed transaction is consistent with the general purposes of this subchapter.

(c) Sale or purchase of merchandise from any company or furnishing of services incident to lessor-lessee relationship

Notwithstanding subsection (a), a person may, in the ordinary course of business, sell to or purchase from any company merchandise or may enter into a lessor-lessee relationship with any person and furnish the services incident thereto.

(d) Joint or joint and several participation with company in transactions

It shall be unlawful for any affiliated person of or principal underwriter for a registered investment company (other than a company of the character described in section 80a–12(d)(3) (A) and (B) of this title), or any affiliated person of such a person or principal underwriter, acting as principal to effect any transaction in which such registered company, or a company controlled by such registered company, is a joint or a joint and several participant with such person, principal underwriter, or affiliated person, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe for the purpose of limiting or preventing participation by such registered or controlled company on a basis different from or less advantageous than that of such other participant. Nothing contained in this subsection shall be deemed to preclude any affiliated person from acting as manager of any underwriting syndicate or other group in which such registered or controlled company is a participant and receiving compensation therefor.

(e) Acceptance of compensation, commissions, fees, etc.

It shall be unlawful for any affiliated person of a registered investment company, or any affiliated person of such person—

(1) acting as agent, to accept from any source any compensation (other than a regular salary or wages from such registered company) for the purchase or sale of any property to or for such registered company or any controlled company thereof, except in the course of such person's business as an underwriter or broker; or

(2) acting as broker, in connection with the sale of securities to or by such registered company or any controlled company thereof, to receive from any source a commission, fee, or other remuneration for effecting such transaction which exceeds (A) the usual and customary broker's commission if the sale is effected on a securities exchange, or (B) 2 per centum of the sales price if the sale is effected in connection with a secondary distribution of such securities, or (C) 1 per centum of the purchase or sale price of such securities if the sale is otherwise effected unless the Commission shall, by rules and regulations or order in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors, permit a larger commission.

(f) Custody of securities

(1) Every registered management company shall place and maintain its securities and similar investments in the custody of (A) a bank or banks having the qualifications prescribed in paragraph (1) of section 80a–26(a) of this title for the trustees of unit investment trusts; or (B) a company which is a member of a national securities exchange as defined in the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], subject to such rules and regulations as the Commission may from time to time prescribe for the protection of investors; or (C) such registered company, but only in accordance with such rules and regulations or orders as the Commission may from time to time prescribe for the protection of investors.

(2) Subject to such rules, regulations, and orders as the Commission may adopt as necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors, a registered management company or any such custodian, with the consent of the registered management company for which it acts as custodian, may deposit all or any part of the securities owned by such registered management company in a system for the central handling of securities established by a national securities exchange or national securities association registered with the Commission under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], or such other person as may be permitted by the Commission, pursuant to which system all securities of any particular class or series of any issuer deposited within the system are treated as fungible and may be transferred or pledged by bookkeeping entry without physical delivery of such securities.

(3) Rules, regulations, and orders of the Commission under this subsection, among other things, may make appropriate provision with respect to such matters as the earmarking, segregation, and hypothecation of such securities and investments, and may provide for or require periodic or other inspections by any or all of the following: Independent public accountants, employees and agents of the Commission, and such other persons as the Commission may designate.

(4) No member of a national securities exchange which trades in securities for its own account may act as custodian except in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission for the protection of investors.

(5) If a registered company maintains its securities and similar investments in the custody of a qualified bank or banks, the cash proceeds from the sale of such securities and similar investments and other cash assets of the company shall likewise be kept in the custody of such a bank or banks, or in accordance with such rules and regulations or orders as the Commission may from time to time prescribe for the protection of investors, except that such a registered company may maintain a checking account in a bank or banks having the qualifications prescribed in paragraph (1) of section 80a–26(a) of this title for the trustees of unit investment trusts with the balance of such account or the aggregate balances of such accounts at no time in excess of the amount of the fidelity bond, maintained pursuant to subsection (g) covering the officers or employees authorized to draw on such account or accounts.

(6) The Commission may, after consultation with and taking into consideration the views of the Federal banking agencies (as defined in section 1813 of title 12), adopt rules and regulations, and issue orders, consistent with the protection of investors, prescribing the conditions under which a bank, or an affiliated person of a bank, either of which is an affiliated person, promoter, organizer, or sponsor of, or principal underwriter for, a registered management company, may serve as custodian of that registered management company.

(g) Bonding of officers and employees having access to securities or funds

The Commission is authorized to require by rules and regulations or orders for the protection of investors that any officer or employee of a registered management investment company who may singly, or jointly with others, have access to securities or funds of any registered company, either directly or through authority to draw upon such funds or to direct generally the disposition of such securities (unless the officer or employee has such access solely through his position as an officer or employee of a bank) be bonded by a reputable fidelity insurance company against larceny and embezzlement in such reasonable minimum amounts as the Commission may prescribe.

(h) Provisions in charter, by-laws, etc., protecting against liability for willful misfeasance, etc.

After one year from the effective date of this subchapter, neither the charter, certificate of incorporation, articles of association, indenture of trust, nor the by-laws of any registered investment company, nor any other instrument pursuant to which such a company is organized or administered, shall contain any provision which protects or purports to protect any director or officer of such company against any liability to the company or to its security holders to which he would otherwise be subject by reason of willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of his office.

(i) Provisions in contracts protecting against willful misfeasance, etc.

After one year from the effective date of this subchapter no contract or agreement under which any person undertakes to act as investment adviser of, or principal underwriter for, a registered investment company shall contain any provision which protects or purports to protect such person against any liability to such company or its security holders to which he would otherwise be subject by reason of willful misfeasance, bad faith, or gross negligence, in the performance of his duties, or by reason of his reckless disregard of his obligations and duties under such contract or agreement.

(j) Rules and regulations prohibiting fraudulent, deceptive or manipulative courses of conduct

It shall be unlawful for any affiliated person of or principal underwriter for a registered investment company or any affiliated person of an investment adviser of or principal underwriter for a registered investment company, to engage in any act, practice, or course of business in connection with the purchase or sale, directly or indirectly, by such person of any security held or to be acquired by such registered investment company in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may adopt to define, and prescribe means reasonably necessary to prevent, such acts, practices, or courses of business as are fraudulent, deceptive or manipulative. Such rules and regulations may include requirements for the adoption of codes of ethics by registered investment companies and investment advisers of, and principal underwriters for, such investment companies establishing such standards as are reasonably necessary to prevent such acts, practices, or courses of business.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §17, 54 Stat. 815; Pub. L. 91–547, §9, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1420; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §612, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1261; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §§211(a), 212, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1396; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §985(d)(4), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1934.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (f)(1)(B), (2), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified principally to chapter 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

For the effective date of this subchapter, referred to in subsecs. (h) and (i), see section 80a–52 of this title.

Amendments

2010—Subsec. (f)(4). Pub. L. 111–203, §985(d)(4)(A), substituted "No member of a national securities exchange" for "No such member".

Subsec. (f)(6). Pub. L. 111–203, §985(d)(4)(B), substituted "company, may serve" for "company may serve".

1999—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 106–102, §212, added par. (4).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 106–102, §211(a), inserted heading, designated first sentence as par. (1) and cls. (1) to (3) as (A) to (C), respectively, designated second through fifth sentences as pars. (2) to (5), respectively, and realigned margins, and added par. (6).

1987—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 100–181 struck out second sentence which read as follows: "In the event that any such instrument does not at the effective date of this chapter comply with the requirements of this subsection and is not amended to comply therewith prior to the expiration of said one year, such company may nevertheless continue to be a registered investment company and shall not be deemed to violate this subsection if prior to said expiration date each such director or officer shall have filed with the Commission a waiver in writing of any protective provision of the instrument to the extent that it does not comply with this subsection, and each such person subsequently elected or appointed shall before assuming office file a similar waiver."

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 100–181 struck out second sentence which read as follows: "In the event that any such contract or agreement does not at the effective date of this chapter comply with the requirements of this subsection and is not amended to comply therewith prior to the expiration of said one year, this subsection shall not be deemed to have been violated if prior to said expiration date each such investment adviser or principal underwriter shall have filed with the Commission a waiver in writing of any protective provision of the contract or agreement to the extent that it does not comply with this subsection."

1970—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 91–547, §9(a), provided in cl. (1) for a registered investment company which is a collective fund maintained by a bank authority to keep its securities and similar investments in the custody of the sponsoring bank, authorized a registered management company or its custodian (with the consent of the management company), subject to the rulemaking power of the Commission, to deposit the securities of the management company in a central certificate depository established by a national securities exchange or a registered national securities association, and provided that if an investment company employs a bank as a custodian for securities and similar investments, then all of its cash

assets, shall likewise be held by a bank, subject to direction as to expenditure and disposition by proper company officials, and provided for maintenance of a checking account or accounts in one or more banks in amounts not to exceed the amount of the fidelity bond covering persons authorized to draw on the accounts.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 91–547, §9(b), substituted "officer or employee" for "officer and employee" and inserted "(unless the officer or employee has such access solely through his position as an officer or employee of a bank)" before "be bonded".

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 91–547, §9(c), added subsec. (j).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Effective Date of 1999 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 106–102 effective 18 months after Nov. 12, 1999, see section 225 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, except that amendment by section 9(a) of Pub. L. 91–547 effective on expiration of one year after Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 (introductory text and par. (1)) of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–18. Capital structure of investment companies

(a) Qualifications on issuance of senior securities

It shall be unlawful for any registered closed-end company to issue any class of senior security, or to sell any such security of which it is the issuer, unless—

(1) if such class of senior security represents an indebtedness—

(A) immediately after such issuance or sale, it will have an asset coverage of at least 300 per centum;

(B) provision is made to prohibit the declaration of any dividend (except a dividend payable in stock of the issuer), or the declaration of any other distribution, upon any class of the capital stock of such investment company, or the purchase of any such capital stock, unless, in every such case, such class of senior securities has at the time of the declaration of any such dividend or distribution or at the time of any such purchase an asset coverage of at least 300 per centum after deducting the amount of such dividend, distribution, or purchase price, as the case may be, except that dividends may be declared upon any preferred stock if such senior security representing indebtedness has an asset coverage of at least 200 per centum at the time of declaration thereof after deducting the amount of such dividend; and

(C) provision is made either—

(i) that, if on the last business day of each of twelve consecutive calendar months such class of senior securities shall have an asset coverage of less than 100 per centum, the holders of such securities voting as a class shall be entitled to elect at least a majority of the members of the board of directors of such registered company, such voting right to continue until such class of senior security shall have an asset coverage of 110 per centum or more on the last business day of each of three consecutive calendar months, or

(ii) that, if on the last business day of each of twenty-four consecutive calendar months such class of senior securities shall have an asset coverage of less than 100 per centum, an event of default shall be deemed to have occurred;

(2) if such class of senior security is a stock—

(A) immediately after such issuance or sale it will have an asset coverage of at least 200 per centum;

(B) provision is made to prohibit the declaration of any dividend (except a dividend payable in common stock of the issuer), or the declaration of any other distribution, upon the common stock of such investment company, or the purchase of any such common stock, unless in every such case such class of senior security has at the time of the declaration of any such dividend or distribution or at the time of any such purchase an asset coverage of at least 200 per centum after deducting the amount of such dividend, distribution or purchase price, as the case may be;

(C) provision is made to entitle the holders of such senior securities, voting as a class, to elect at least two directors at all times, and, subject to the prior rights, if any, of the holders of any other class of senior securities outstanding, to elect a majority of the directors if at any time dividends on such class of securities shall be unpaid in an amount equal to two full years' dividends on such securities, and to continue to be so represented until all dividends in arrears shall have been paid or otherwise provided for;

(D) provision is made requiring approval by the vote of a majority of such securities, voting as a class, of any plan of reorganization adversely affecting such securities or of any action requiring a vote of security holders as in section 80a–13(a) of this title provided; and

(E) such class of stock shall have complete priority over any other class as to distribution of assets and payment of dividends, which dividends shall be cumulative.

(b) Asset coverage in respect of senior securities

The asset coverage in respect of a senior security provided for in subsection (a) may be determined on the basis of values calculated as of a time within forty-eight hours (not including Sundays or holidays) next preceding the time of such determination. The time of issue or sale shall, in the case of an offering of such securities to existing stockholders of the issuer, be deemed to be the first date on which such offering is made, and in all other cases shall be deemed to be the time as of which a firm commitment to issue or sell and to take or purchase such securities shall be made.

(c) Prohibitions relating to issuance of senior securities

Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (a) it shall be unlawful for any registered closed-end investment company to issue or sell any senior security representing indebtedness if immediately thereafter such company will have outstanding more than one class of senior security representing indebtedness, or to issue or sell any senior security which is a stock if immediately thereafter such company will have outstanding more than one class of senior security which is a stock, except that (1) any such class of indebtedness or stock may be issued in one or more series: *Provided*, That no such series shall have a preference or priority over any other series upon the distribution of the assets of such registered closed-end company or in respect of the payment of interest or dividends, and (2) promissory notes or other evidences of indebtedness issued in consideration of any loan, extension, or renewal thereof, made by a bank or other person and privately arranged, and not intended to be publicly distributed, shall not be deemed to be a separate class of senior securities representing indebtedness within the meaning of this subsection.

(d) Warrants and rights to subscription

It shall be unlawful for any registered management company to issue any warrant or right to subscribe to or purchase a security of which such company is the issuer, except in the form of warrants or rights to subscribe expiring not later than one hundred and twenty days after their issuance and issued exclusively and ratably to a class or classes of such company's security holders; except that any warrant may be issued in exchange for outstanding warrants in connection with a plan of reorganization.

(e) Application of section to specific senior securities

The provisions of this section shall not apply to any senior securities issued or sold by any registered closed-end company—

(1) for the purpose of refunding through payment, purchase, redemption, retirement, or exchange, any senior security of such registered investment company except that no senior security representing indebtedness shall be so issued or sold for the purpose of refunding any senior security which is a stock; or

(2) pursuant to any plan of reorganization (other than for refunding as referred to in paragraph (1) of this subsection), provided—

(A) that such senior securities are issued or sold for the purpose of substituting or exchanging such senior securities for outstanding senior securities, and if such senior securities represent indebtedness they are issued or sold for the purpose of substituting or exchanging such senior securities for outstanding senior securities representing indebtedness, of any registered investment company which is a party to such plan of reorganization; or

(B) that the total amount of such senior securities so issued or sold pursuant to such plan does not exceed the total amount of senior securities of all the companies which are parties to such plan, and the total amount of senior securities representing indebtedness so issued or sold pursuant to such plan does not exceed the total amount of senior securities representing indebtedness of all such companies, or, alternatively, the total amount of such senior securities so issued or sold pursuant to such plan does not have the effect of increasing the ratio of senior securities representing indebtedness to the securities representing stock or the ratio of senior securities representing stock to securities junior thereto when compared with such ratios as they existed before such reorganization.

(f) Senior securities securing loans from bank; securities not included in "senior security"

(1) It shall be unlawful for any registered open-end company to issue any class of senior security or to sell any senior security of which it is the issuer, except that any such registered company shall be permitted to borrow from any bank: *Provided*, That immediately after any such borrowing there is an asset coverage of at least 300 per centum for all borrowings of such registered company: *And provided further*, That in the event that such asset coverage shall at any time fall below 300 per centum such registered company shall, within three days thereafter (not including Sundays and holidays) or such longer period as the Commission may prescribe by rules and regulations, reduce the amount of its borrowings to an extent that the asset coverage of such borrowings shall be at least 300 per centum.

(2) "Senior security" shall not, in the case of a registered open-end company, include a class or classes or a number of series of preferred or special stock each of which is preferred over all other classes or series in respect of assets specifically allocated to that class or series: *Provided*, That (A) such company has outstanding no class or series of stock which is not so preferred over all other classes or series, or (B) the only other outstanding class of the issuer's stock consists of a common stock upon which no dividend (other than a liquidating dividend) is permitted to be paid and which in the aggregate represents not more than one-half of 1 per centum of the issuer's outstanding voting securities. For the purpose of insuring fair and equitable treatment of the holders of the outstanding voting securities of each class or series of stock of such company, the Commission may by rule, regulation, or order direct that any matter required to be submitted to the holders of the outstanding voting securities of such company shall not be deemed to have been effectively acted upon unless approved by the holders of such percentage (not exceeding a majority) of the outstanding voting securities of each class or series of stock affected by such matter as shall be prescribed in such rule, regulation, or order.

(g) "Senior security" defined

Unless otherwise provided: "Senior security" means any bond, debenture, note, or similar obligation or instrument constituting a security and evidencing indebtedness, and any stock of a class having priority over any other class as to distribution of assets or payment of dividends; and "senior security representing indebtedness" means any senior security other than stock.

The term "senior security", when used in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of paragraph (1) of subsection (a), shall not include any promissory note or other evidence of indebtedness issued in consideration of any loan, extension, or renewal thereof, made by a bank or other person and privately arranged, and not intended to be publicly distributed; nor shall such term, when used in this section, include any such promissory note or other evidence of indebtedness in any case where such a loan is for temporary purposes only and in an amount not exceeding 5 per centum of the value of the total assets of the issuer at the time when the loan is made. A loan shall be presumed to be for temporary purposes if it is repaid within sixty days and is not extended or renewed; otherwise it shall be presumed not to be for temporary purposes. Any such presumption may be rebutted by evidence.

(h) "Asset coverage" defined

"Asset coverage" of a class of senior security representing an indebtedness of an issuer means the ratio which the value of the total assets of such issuer, less all liabilities and indebtedness not represented by senior securities, bears to the aggregate amount of senior securities representing indebtedness of such issuer. "Asset coverage" of a class of senior security of an issuer which is a stock means the ratio which the value of the total assets of such issuer, less all liabilities and indebtedness not represented by senior securities, bears to the aggregate amount of senior securities representing indebtedness of such issuer plus the aggregate of the involuntary liquidation preference of such class of senior security which is a stock. The involuntary liquidation preference of a class of senior security which is a stock shall be deemed to mean the amount to which such class of senior security would be entitled on involuntary liquidation of the issuer in preference to a security junior to it.

(i) Future issuance of stock as voting stock; exceptions

Except as provided in subsection (a) of this section, or as otherwise required by law, every share of stock hereafter issued by a registered management company (except a common-law trust of the character described in section 80a–16(c) of this title) shall be a voting stock and have equal voting rights with every other outstanding voting stock: *Provided*, That this subsection shall not apply to shares issued pursuant to the terms of any warrant or subscription right outstanding on March 15, 1940, or any firm contract entered into before March 15, 1940, to purchase such securities from such company nor to shares issued in accordance with any rules, regulations, or orders which the Commission may make permitting such issue.

(j) Securities issued by registered face-amount certificate company

Notwithstanding any provision of this subchapter, it shall be unlawful, after August 22, 1940, for any registered face-amount certificate company—

(1) to issue, except in accordance with such rules, regulations, or orders as the Commission may prescribe in the public interest or as necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors, any security other than (A) a face-amount certificate; (B) a common stock having a par value and being without preference as to dividends or distributions and having at least equal voting rights with any outstanding security of such company; or (C) short-term payment or promissory notes or other indebtedness issued in consideration of any loan, extension, or renewal thereof, made by a bank or other person and privately arranged and not intended to be publicly offered;

(2) if such company has outstanding any security, other than such face-amount certificates, common stock, promissory notes, or other evidence of indebtedness, to make any distribution or declare or pay any dividend on any capital security in contravention of such rules and regulations or orders as the Commission may prescribe in the

public interest or as necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors or to insure the financial integrity of such company, to prevent the impairment of the company's ability to meet its obligations upon its face-amount certificates; or

(3) to issue any of its securities except for cash or securities including securities of which such company is the issuer.

(k) Application of section to companies operating under Small Business Investment Act provisions

The provisions of subparagraphs (A) and (B) of paragraph (1) of subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to investment companies operating under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958 [15 U.S.C. 661 et seq.], and the provisions of paragraph (2) of said subsection shall not apply to such companies so long as such class of senior security shall be held or guaranteed by the Small Business Administration.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §18, 54 Stat. 817; Pub. L. 85–699, title III, §307(c), Aug. 21, 1958, 72 Stat. 694; Pub. L. 91–547, §10, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1421; Pub. L. 85–699, title III, §317, formerly §319, Aug. 21, 1958, as added Pub. L. 92–595, §2(g), Oct. 27, 1972, 86 Stat. 1316, renumbered §317, Pub. L. 104–208, div. D, title II, §208(h)(1)(E), Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009–747; Pub. L. 94–29, §28(4), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 165; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §613, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1261; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(c)(4), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Small Business Investment Act of 1958, referred to in subsec. (k), is Pub. L. 85–699, Aug. 21, 1958, 72 Stat. 689, which is classified principally to chapter 14B (§661 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 661 of this title and Tables.

Amendments

1998—Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted "paragraph (1) of this subsection" for "subsection (e)(2) of this section" in introductory provisions.

1987—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100–181 redesignated pars. (2) and (3) as (1) and (2), respectively, and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "pursuant to any firm contract to purchase or sell entered into prior to March 15, 1940;".

1975—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 94–29 substituted "section 80a–16(c) of this title" for "section 80a–16(b) of this title".

1972—Subsec. (k). Section 319 of Pub. L. 85–699, as added by Pub. L. 92–595, inserted provision that subsec. (a)(2) shall not apply to companies operating under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, so long as such class of senior security shall be held or guaranteed by the Small Business Administration.

1970—Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 91–547 substituted "That (A)" and "or (B) the" for "(A) That" and "or (B) that the" and inserted provision for purpose of insuring fair and equitable treatment of the holders of the outstanding voting securities of each class or series of stock of such company, that the Commission may by rule, regulation, or order direct that any matter required to be submitted to the holders of the outstanding voting securities of such company shall not be deemed to have been effectively acted upon unless approved by the holders of such percentage (not exceeding a majority) of the outstanding voting securities of each class or series of stock affected by such matter as shall be prescribed in such rule, regulation, or order.

1958—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 85–699 added subsec. (k).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1975 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat.

1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–19. Payments or distributions

(a) Dividends; restriction; exception

It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company to pay any dividend, or to make any distribution in the nature of a dividend payment, wholly or partly from any source other than—

(1) such company's accumulated undistributed net income, determined in accordance with good accounting practice and not including profits or losses realized upon the sale of securities or other properties; or

(2) such company's net income so determined for the current or preceding fiscal year;

unless such payment is accompanied by a written statement which adequately discloses the source or sources of such payment. The Commission may prescribe the form of such statement by rules and regulations in the public interest and for the protection of investors.

(b) Long-term capital gains; limitation

It shall be unlawful in contravention of such rules, regulations, or orders as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors for any registered investment company to distribute long-term capital gains, as defined in title 26, more often than once every twelve months.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §19, 54 Stat. 821; Pub. L. 91–547, §11, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1422; Pub. L. 99–514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1986—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99–514 substituted "Internal Revenue Code of 1986" for "Internal Revenue Code of 1954", which for purposes of codification was translated as "title 26" thus requiring no change in text.

1970—Pub. L. 91–547 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective on expiration of one year after Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30(1) of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–20. Proxies; voting trusts; circular ownership

(a) Prohibition on use of means of interstate commerce for solicitation of proxies

It shall be unlawful for any person, by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or otherwise, to solicit or to permit the use of his name to solicit any proxy or consent or authorization in respect of any security of which a registered investment company is the issuer in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(b) Prohibition on use of means of interstate commerce for sale of voting-trust certificates

It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company or affiliated person thereof, any issuer of a voting-trust certificate relating to any security of a registered investment company, or any underwriter of such a certificate, by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, or otherwise, to offer for sale, sell, or deliver after sale, in connection with a public offering, any such voting-trust certificate.

(c) Prohibition on purchase of securities knowingly resulting in cross-ownership or circular ownership

No registered investment company shall purchase any voting security if, to the knowledge of such registered company, cross-ownership or circular ownership exists, or after such acquisition will exist, between such registered company and the issuer of such security. Cross-ownership shall be deemed to exist between two companies when each of such companies beneficially owns more than 3 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of the other company. Circular ownership shall be deemed to exist between two companies if such companies are included within a group of three or more companies, each of which—

(1) beneficially owns more than 3 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of one or more other companies of the group; and

(2) has more than 3 per centum of its own outstanding voting securities beneficially owned by another company, or by each of two or more other companies, of the group.

(d) Duty to eliminate existing cross-ownership or circular ownership

If cross-ownership or circular ownership between a registered investment company and any other company or companies comes into existence upon the purchase by a registered investment company of the securities of another company, it shall be the duty of such registered company, within one year after it first knows of the existence of such cross-ownership or circular ownership, to eliminate the same.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §20, 54 Stat. 822; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §614, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1262.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100–181, §614(1), struck out at end "The prohibitions of this subsection shall not apply to a class of voting-trust certificates, if any certificate of such class was made the subject of a public offering by the issuer or by or through an underwriter prior to March 15, 1940."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100–181, §614(2), (3), struck out first sentence "If on the effective date of this subchapter cross-ownership or circular ownership exists between a registered investment company and any other company or companies, it shall be the duty of such registered company, within five years after such effective date, to eliminate such cross-ownership or circular ownership." and "at any time after the effective date of this subchapter" after "If" in second sentence.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–21. Loans by management companies

It shall be unlawful for any registered management company to lend money or property to any person, directly or indirectly, if—

(a) the investment policies of such registered company, as recited in its registration statement and reports filed under this subchapter, do not permit such a loan; or

(b) such person controls or is under common control with such registered company; except that the provisions of this paragraph shall not apply to any loan from a registered company to a company which owns all of the outstanding securities of such registered company, except directors' qualifying shares.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §21, 54 Stat. 822; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §615, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1262.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100–181 struck out "to the extension or renewal of any such loan made prior to March 15, 1940, or" after "shall not apply".

§80a–22. Distribution, redemption, and repurchase of securities; regulations by securities associations

(a) Rules relating to minimum and maximum prices for purchase and sale of securities from investment company; time for resale and redemption

A securities association registered under section 78o–3 of this title may prescribe, by rules adopted and in effect in accordance with said section and subject to all provisions of said section applicable to the rules of such an association —

(1) a method or methods for computing the minimum price at which a member thereof may purchase from any investment company any redeemable security issued by such company and the maximum price at which a member may sell to such company any redeemable security issued by it or which he may receive for such security upon redemption, so that the price in each case will bear such relation to the current net asset value of such security computed as of such time as the rules may prescribe; and

(2) a minimum period of time which must elapse after the sale or issue of such security before any resale to such company by a member or its redemption upon surrender by a member;

in each case for the purpose of eliminating or reducing so far as reasonably practicable any dilution of the value of other outstanding securities of such company or any other result of such purchase, redemption, or sale which is unfair to holders of such other outstanding securities; and said rules may prohibit the members of the association from purchasing, selling, or surrendering for redemption any such redeemable securities in contravention of said rules.

(b) Rules relating to purchase of securities by members from issuer investment company

(1) Such a securities association may also, by rules adopted and in effect in accordance with section 78o–3 of this title, and notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (b)(6) thereof but subject to all other provisions of said section applicable to the rules of such an association, prohibit its members from purchasing, in connection with a primary distribution of redeemable securities of which any registered investment company is the issuer, any such security from the issuer or from any principal underwriter except at a price equal to the price at which such security is then offered to the public less a commission, discount, or spread which is computed in conformity with a method or methods, and within such limitations as to the relation thereof to said public offering price, as such rules may prescribe in order that the price at which such security is offered or sold to the public shall not include an excessive sales load but shall allow for reasonable compensation for sales personnel, broker-dealers, and underwriters, and for reasonable sales loads to investors. The Commission shall on application or otherwise, if it appears that smaller companies are subject to relatively higher operating costs, make due allowance therefor by granting any such company or class of companies appropriate qualified exemptions from the provisions of this section.

(2) At any time after the expiration of eighteen months from December 14, 1970 (or, if earlier, after a securities association has adopted for purposes of paragraph (1) any rule respecting excessive sales loads), the Commission may alter or supplement the rules of any securities association as may be necessary to effectuate the purposes of this subsection in the manner provided by section 78s(c) of this title.

(3) If any provision of this subsection is in conflict with any provision of any law of the United States in effect on December 14, 1970, the provisions of this subsection shall prevail.

(c) Conflicting rules of Commission and associations

The Commission may make rules and regulations applicable to registered investment companies and to principal underwriters of, and dealers in, the redeemable securities of any registered investment company, whether or not members of any securities association, to the same extent, covering the same subject matter, and for the accomplishment of the same ends as are prescribed in subsection (a) of this section in respect of the rules which may be made by a registered securities association governing its members. Any rules and regulations so made by the Commission, to the extent that they may be inconsistent with the rules of any such association, shall so long as they remain in force supersede the rules of the association and be binding upon its members as well as all other underwriters and dealers to whom they may be applicable.

(d) Sale of securities except to or through principal underwriter; price of securities

No registered investment company shall sell any redeemable security issued by it to any person except either to or through a principal underwriter for distribution or at a current public offering price described in the prospectus, and, if such class of security is being currently offered to the public by or through an underwriter, no principal underwriter of such security and no dealer shall sell any such security to any person except a dealer, a principal underwriter, or the issuer, except at a current public offering price described in the prospectus. Nothing in this subsection shall prevent a sale made (i) pursuant to an offer of exchange permitted by section 80a–11 of this title including any offer made pursuant to section 80a–11(b) of this title; (ii) pursuant to an offer made solely to all registered holders of the securities, or of a particular class or series of securities issued by the company proportionate to their holdings or proportionate to any cash distribution made to them by the company (subject to appropriate qualifications designed solely to avoid issuance of fractional securities); or (iii) in accordance with rules and regulations of the Commission made pursuant to subsection (b) of section 80a–12 of this title.

(e) Suspension of right of redemption or postponement of date of payment

No registered investment company shall suspend the right of redemption, or postpone the date of payment or satisfaction upon redemption of any redeemable security in accordance with its terms for more than seven days after the tender of such security to the company or its agent designated for that purpose for redemption, except—

(1) for any period (A) during which the New York Stock Exchange is closed other than customary week-end and holiday closings or (B) during which trading on the New York Stock Exchange is restricted;

(2) for any period during which an emergency exists as a result of which (A) disposal by the company of securities owned by it is not reasonably practicable or (B) it is not reasonably practicable for such company fairly to determine the value of its net assets; or

(3) for such other periods as the Commission may by order permit for the protection of security holders of the company.

The Commission shall by rules and regulations determine the conditions under which (i) trading shall be deemed to be restricted and (ii) an emergency shall be deemed to exist within the meaning of this subsection.

(f) Restrictions on transferability or negotiability of securities

No registered open-end company shall restrict the transferability or negotiability of any security of which it is the issuer except in conformity with the statements with respect thereto contained in its registration statement nor in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe in the interests of the holders of all of the outstanding securities of such investment company.

(g) Issuance of securities for services or property other than cash

No registered open-end company shall issue any of its securities (1) for services; or (2) for property other than cash or securities (including securities of which such registered company is the issuer), except as a dividend or distribution to its security holders or in connection with a reorganization.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §22, 54 Stat. 823; Pub. L. 91–547, §12, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1422; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §616, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1262.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100–181, §616(1), substituted "subsection (b)(6)" for "subsection (b)(8)" in par. (1).

Pub. L. 100–181, §616(2), (3), redesignated par. (3) as (2) and substituted "section 78s(c)" for "section 78o–3(k)(2)", redesignated par. (4) as (3), and struck out former par. (2) which read as follows: "At any time after the expiration of eighteen months from December 14, 1970, or after a securities association has adopted rules as contemplated by this subsection, the Commission may make such rules and regulations pursuant to section 78o(b)(10) of this title as are appropriate to effectuate the purpose of this subsection with respect to sales of shares of a registered investment company by broker-dealers subject to regulation under section 78o(b)(8) of this title: *Provided*, That the underwriter of such shares may file with the Commission at any time a notice of election to comply with the rules prescribed pursuant to this subsection by a national securities association specified in such notice, and thereafter the sales load shall not exceed that prescribed by such rules of such association, and the rules of the Commission as hereinabove authorized shall thereafter be inapplicable to such sales."

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100–181, §616(4), (5), in introductory provisions, substituted "redemption, or postpone" for "redemption or postpone" and "redemption, except" for "redemption except", and, in closing provisions, struck out "Any company which, as of March 15, 1940, was required by provision of its charter, certificate of incorporation, articles of association, or trust indenture, or of a bylaw or regulation duly adopted thereunder, to postpone the date of payment or satisfaction upon redemption of redeemable securities issued by it, shall be exempt from the requirements of this subsection; but such exemption shall terminate upon the expiration of one year from the effective date of this subchapter, or upon the repeal or amendment of such provision, or upon the sale by such company after March 15, 1940, of any security (other than short-term paper) of which it is the issuer, whichever first occurs."

1970—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91–547, §12(a), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted "notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (b)(8) thereof but", and "other" in phrase "all other provisions", substituted exclusion of "excessive sales load" for "unconscionable or grossly excessive sales load", provided for allowance for reasonable compensation for sales personnel, broker-dealers, and underwriters, and for reasonable sales loads to investors, and for grant by Commission of appropriate qualified exemptions from provisions of this section where on application or otherwise it appears that smaller companies are subject to relatively higher operating costs, and added pars. (2) to (4).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 91–547, §12(b), provided for application of rules and regulations to registered investment companies, struck out introductory phrase "After one year from the effective date of this chapter", "registered" before "securities association" where first appearing, and substituted "prescribed in subsection (a) of this section" for "prescribed in subsections (a) and (b) of this section" and ". Any rules and regulations" for "; and any rules and regulations".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 91–547, §12(c), substituted "public offering price described in the prospectus. Nothing in this subsection" for "public offering price described in the prospectus: *Provided, however*, That nothing in this subsection" and struck out "clause (1) or (2) of" before "section 80a–11(b) of this title".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–23. Closed-end companies

(a) Issuance of securities

No registered closed-end company shall issue any of its securities (1) for services; or (2) for property other than cash or securities (including securities of which such registered company is the issuer), except as a dividend or distribution to its security holders or in connection with a reorganization.

(b) Sale of common stock at price below current net asset value

No registered closed-end company shall sell any common stock of which it is the issuer at a price below the current net asset value of such stock, exclusive of any distributing commission or discount (which net asset value shall be determined as of a time within forty-eight hours, excluding Sundays and holidays, next preceding the time of such determination), except (1) in connection with an offering to the holders of one or more classes of its capital stock; (2) with the consent of a majority of its common stockholders; (3) upon conversion of a convertible security in accordance with its terms; (4) upon the exercise of any warrant outstanding on August 22, 1940, or issued in accordance with the provisions of section 80a–18(d) of this title; or (5) under such other circumstances as the Commission may permit by rules and regulations or orders for the protection of investors.

(c) Purchase of securities of which it is issuer; exceptions

No registered closed-end company shall purchase any securities of any class of which it is the issuer except—

(1) on a securities exchange or such other open market as the Commission may designate by rules and regulations or orders: *Provided*, That if such securities are stock, such registered company shall, within the preceding six months, have informed stockholders of its intention to purchase stock of such class by letter or report addressed to stockholders of such class; or

(2) pursuant to tenders, after reasonable opportunity to submit tenders given to all holders of securities of the class to be purchased; or

(3) under such other circumstances as the Commission may permit by rules and regulations or orders for the protection of investors in order to insure that such purchases are made in a manner or on a basis which does not unfairly discriminate against any holders of the class or classes of securities to be purchased.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §23, 54 Stat. 825.)

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Parity for Closed-End Companies Regarding Offering and Proxy Rules

Pub. L. 115–174, title V, §509, May 24, 2018, 132 Stat. 1364, provided that:

"(a) Revision to Rules.—Not later than the end of the 1-year period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act [May 24, 2018], the Securities and Exchange Commission shall propose and, not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act, the Securities and Exchange Commission shall finalize any rules, as appropriate, to allow any closed-end company, as defined in section 5(a)(2) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–5), that is registered as an investment company under such Act [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], and is listed on a national securities exchange or that makes periodic repurchase offers pursuant to section 270.23c–3 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to use the securities offering and proxy rules, subject to conditions the Commission determines appropriate, that are available

to other issuers that are required to file reports under section 13 or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m; 78o(d)). Any action that the Commission takes pursuant to this subsection shall consider the availability of information to investors, including what disclosures constitute adequate information to be designated as a 'well-known seasoned issuer'.

"(b) TREATMENT IF REVISIONS NOT COMPLETED IN A TIMELY MANNER.—If the Commission fails to complete the revisions required by subsection (a) by the time required by such subsection, any registered closed-end company that is listed on a national securities exchange or that makes periodic repurchase offers pursuant to section 270.23c–3 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, shall be deemed to be an eligible issuer under the final rule of the Commission titled 'Securities Offering Reform' (70 Fed. Reg. 44722; published August 3, 2005).

"(c) RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.—

"(1) NO EFFECT ON RULE 482.—Nothing in this section or the amendments made by this section shall be construed to impair or limit in any way a registered closed-end company from using section 230.482 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to distribute sales material.

"(2) REFERENCES.—Any reference in this section to a section of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, or to any form or schedule means such rule, section, form, or schedule, or any successor to any such rule, section, form, or schedule."

[For definition of "company" as used in section 509 of Pub. L. 115–174, set out above, see section 2 of Pub. L. 115–174, set out as a Definitions note under section 5365 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–24. Registration of securities under Securities Act of 1933

(a) Registration statement; contents

In registering under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], any security of which it is the issuer, a registered investment company, in lieu of furnishing a registration statement containing the information and documents specified in schedule A of said Act [15 U.S.C. 77aa], may file a registration statement containing the following information and documents:

(1) such copies of the registration statement filed by such company under this subchapter, and of such reports filed by such company pursuant to section 80a–29 of this title or such copies of portions of such registration statement and reports, as the Commission shall designate by rules and regulations; and

(2) such additional information and documents (including a prospectus) as the Commission shall prescribe by rules and regulations as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(b) Filing of three copies of advertisement, pamphlet, etc. in connection with public offering; time of filing

It shall be unlawful for any of the following companies, or for any underwriter for such a company, in connection with a public offering of any security of which such company is the issuer, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentalities of interstate commerce, to transmit any advertisement, pamphlet, circular, form letter, or other sales literature addressed to or intended for distribution to prospective investors unless three copies of the full text thereof have been filed with the Commission or are filed with the Commission within ten days thereafter:

(1) any registered open-end company;

(2) any registered unit investment trust; or

(3) any registered face-amount certificate company.

(c) Additional requirement for prospectuses relating to periodic payment plan certificates or face-amount certificate

In addition to the powers relative to prospectuses granted the Commission by section 10 of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77j], the Commission is authorized to require, by rules and regulations or order, that the information contained in any prospectus relating to any periodic payment plan certificate or face-amount certificate registered under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], on or after the effective date of this subchapter be presented in such form and order of items, and such prospectus contain such summaries of any portion of such information, as are necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(d) Application of other provisions to securities of investment companies, face-amount certificate companies, and open-end companies or unit investment trust

The exemption provided by paragraph (8) of section 3(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77c(a)(8)] shall not apply to any security of which an investment company is the issuer. The exemption provided by paragraph (11) of said section 3(a) [15 U.S.C. 77c(a)(11)] shall not apply to any security of which a registered investment company is the issuer. The exemption provided by section 4(3) [1] of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77d(a)(3)] shall not apply to any transaction in a security issued by a face-amount certificate company or in a redeemable security issued by an open-end management company or unit investment trust if any other security of the same class is currently being offered or sold by the issuer or by or through an underwriter in a distribution which is not exempted from section 5 of said Act [15 U.S.C. 77e], except to such extent and subject to such terms and conditions as the Commission, having due regard for the public interest and the protection of investors, may prescribe by rules or regulations with respect to any class of persons, securities, or transactions.

(e) Amendment of registration statements relating to securities issued by face-amount certificate companies, open-end management companies or unit investment trusts

For the purposes of section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended [15 U.S.C. 77k] the effective date of the latest amendment filed shall be deemed the effective date of the registration statement with respect to securities sold after such amendment shall have become effective. For the purposes of section 13 of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended [15 U.S.C. 77m], no such security shall be deemed to have been bona fide offered to the public prior to the effective date of the latest amendment filed pursuant to this subsection. Except to the extent the Commission otherwise provides by rules or regulations as appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, no prospectus relating to a security issued by a face-amount certificate company or a redeemable security issued by an open-end management company or unit investment trust which varies for the purposes of subsection (a)(3) of section 10 of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77j(a)(3)] from the latest prospectus filed as a part of the registration statement shall be deemed to meet the requirements of said section 10 [15 U.S.C. 77j] unless filed as part of an amendment to the registration statement under said Act [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] and such amendment has become effective.

(f) Registration of indefinite amount of securities

(1) Registration of securities

Upon the effective date of its registration statement, as provided by section 8 of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77h], a face-amount certificate company, open-end management company, or unit investment trust, shall be deemed to have registered an indefinite amount of securities.

(2) Payment of registration fees

Not later than 90 days after the end of the fiscal year of a company or trust referred to in paragraph (1), the company or trust, as applicable, shall pay a registration fee to the Commission, calculated in the manner specified in section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)], based on the aggregate sales price for which its securities (including, for purposes of this paragraph, all securities issued pursuant to a dividend reinvestment plan) were sold pursuant to a registration of an indefinite amount of securities under this subsection during the previous fiscal year of the company or trust, reduced by—

(A) the aggregate redemption or repurchase price of the securities of the company or trust during that year; and

(B) the aggregate redemption or repurchase price of the securities of the company or trust during any prior fiscal year ending not more than 1 year before October 11, 1996, that were not used previously by the company or trust to reduce fees payable under this section.

(3) Interest due on late payment

A company or trust paying the fee required by this subsection or any portion thereof more than 90 days after the end of the fiscal year of the company or trust shall pay to the Commission interest on unpaid amounts, at the average investment rate for Treasury tax and loan accounts published by the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to section 3717(a) of title 31. The payment of interest pursuant to this paragraph shall not preclude the Commission from bringing an action to enforce the requirements of paragraph (2).

(4) Rulemaking authority

The Commission may adopt rules and regulations to implement this subsection.

(g) Additional prospectuses

In addition to any prospectus permitted or required by section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77j(a)], the Commission shall permit, by rules or regulations deemed necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, the use of a prospectus for purposes of section 5(b)(1) of that Act [15 U.S.C. 77e(b)(1)] with respect to securities issued by a registered investment company. Such a prospectus, which may include information the substance of which is not included in the prospectus specified in section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, shall be deemed to be permitted by section 10(b) of that Act [15 U.S.C. 77j(b)].

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §24, 54 Stat. 825; Aug. 10, 1954, ch. 667, title IV, §§402, 403, 68 Stat. 689; Pub. L. 91–547, §13, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1423; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §617, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1262; Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §§203(a), (b), 204, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3427, 3428.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsecs. (a), (c), and (e), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

For the effective date of this subchapter, referred to in subsec. (c), see section 80a–52 of this title.

Section 4(3) of the Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (d), was redesignated section 4(a)(3) of that Act by Pub. L. 112–106, title II, §201(b)(1), (c)(1), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 314, and is classified to section 77d(a)(3) of this title.

Amendments

1996—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–290, §203(a), substituted "For" for "(3) For", struck out "pursuant to this subsection or otherwise" before "shall be deemed the effective date of the registration statement", and struck out pars. (1) and (2) which read as follows:

"(1) A registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933 relating to a security issued by a face-amount certificate company or a redeemable security issued by an open-end management company or unit investment trust may be amended after its effective date so as to increase the securities specified therein as proposed to be offered. At the time of filing such amendment there shall be paid to the Commission a fee, calculated in the manner specified in section 6(b) of said Act, with respect to the additional securities therein proposed to be offered.

"(2) The filing of such an amendment to a registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933 shall not be deemed to have taken place unless it is accompanied by a United States postal money order or a certified bank check or cash for the amount of the fee required under paragraph (1) of this subsection."

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–290, §203(b), inserted heading and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "In the case of securities issued by a face-amount certificate company or redeemable securities issued by an open-end management company or unit investment trust, which are sold in an amount in excess of the number of securities included in an effective registration statement of any such company, such company may, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission shall adopt as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, elect to have the registration of such securities deemed effective as of the time of their sale, upon payment to the Commission, within six months after any such sale, of a registration fee of three times the amount of the fee which would have otherwise been applicable to such securities. Upon any such election and payment, the registration statement of such company shall be considered to have been in effect with respect to such shares. The Commission may also adopt rules and regulations as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to permit the registration of an indefinite number of the securities issued by a face-amount certificate company or redeemable securities issued by an open-end management company or unit investment trust."

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 104–290, §204, added subsec. (g).

1987—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100–181 struck out ", except a security sold or disposed of by the issuer or bona fide offered to the public prior to the effective date of this subchapter and with respect to a security so sold, disposed of, or offered, shall not apply to any new offering thereof on or after the effective date of this subchapter" at end of second sentence.

1970—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 91–547, §13(a), substituted "section 4(3) of the Securities Act of 1933" for "the third clause of section 4(1) of the Securities Act of 1933" and struck out the comma before "if any".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 91–547, §13(b), added subsec. (f).

1954—Subsec. (d). Act Aug. 10, 1954, §402, inserted provision making dealer's exemption contained in third clause of section 77d(1) of this title inapplicable to transactions in the securities of investment companies that are offered to the public on a continuous basis, subject to certain exceptions.

Subsec. (e). Act Aug. 10, 1954, §403, added subsec. (e).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1996 Amendment

Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §203(c), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3428, provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section] shall become effective on the earlier of—

"(1) 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 1996]; or

"(2) the effective date of final rules or regulations issued in accordance with section 24(f) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [subsec. (f) of this section], as amended by this section."

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Effective Date of 1954 Amendment

Amendment by act Aug. 10, 1954, effective sixty days after Aug. 10, 1954, see note under section 77b of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

[1] *See References in Text note below.*

§80a–25. Reorganization plans; reports by Commission

(a) Filing of reorganization plan and other information with Commission

Any person who, by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or otherwise, solicits or permits the use of his name to solicit any proxy, consent, authorization, power of attorney, ratification, deposit, or dissent in respect of any plan of reorganization of any registered investment company shall file with, or mail to, the Commission for its information, within twenty-four hours after the commencement of any such solicitation, a copy of such plan and any deposit agreement relating thereto and of any proxy, consent, authorization, power of attorney, ratification, instrument of deposit, or instrument of dissent in respect thereto, if or to the extent that such documents shall not already have been filed with the Commission.

(b) Advisory report by Commission at request of shareholders

The Commission is authorized, if so requested, prior to any solicitation of security holders with respect to any plan of reorganization, by any registered investment company which is, or any of the securities of which are, the subject of or is a participant in any such plan, or if so requested by the holders of 25 per centum of any class of its outstanding securities, to render an advisory report in respect of the fairness of any such plan and its effect upon any class or classes of security holders. In such event any registered investment company, in respect of which the Commission shall have rendered any such advisory report, shall mail promptly a copy of such advisory report to all its security holders affected by any such plan: *Provided*, That such advisory report shall have been received by it at least forty-eight hours (not including Sundays and holidays) before final action is taken in relation to such plan at any meeting of security holders called to act in relation thereto, or any adjournment of any such meeting, or if no meeting be called, then prior to the final date of acceptance of such plan by security holders. In respect of securities not registered as to ownership, in lieu of mailing a copy of such advisory report, such registered company shall publish promptly a statement of the existence of such advisory report in a newspaper of general circulation in its principal place of business and shall make available copies of such advisory report upon request. Notwithstanding the provision of this section the Commission shall not render such advisory report although so requested by any such investment company or such security holders if the fairness or feasibility of said plan is in issue in any proceeding pending in any court of competent jurisdiction unless such plan is submitted to the Commission for that purpose by such court.

(c) Enjoinder of plan of reorganization

Any district court of the United States in the State of incorporation of a registered investment company, or any such court for the district in which such company maintains its principal place of business, is authorized to enjoin the consummation of any plan of reorganization of such registered investment company upon proceedings instituted by the Commission (which is authorized so to proceed upon behalf of security holders of such registered company, or any class thereof), if such court shall determine that any such plan is not fair and equitable to all security holders.

(d) Application of section to reorganizations under title 11

Nothing contained in this section shall in any way affect or derogate from the powers of the courts of the United States and the Commission with reference to reorganizations contained in title 11.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §25, 54 Stat. 826; Pub. L. 91–547, §14, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1424; Pub. L. 95–598, title III, §310(c), Nov. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 2676.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1978—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95–598 substituted "title 11" for "the Bankruptcy Act of 1898, as amended".

1970—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 91–547 substituted "that any such plan is not fair and equitable to all security holders" for "any such plan to be grossly unfair or to constitute gross misconduct or gross abuse of trust on the part of the officers, directors, or investment advisers of such registered company or other sponsors of such plan".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1978 Amendment

Amendment effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 402(a) of Pub. L. 95–598, set out as an Effective Date note preceding section 101 of Title 11, Bankruptcy.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–26. Unit investment trusts

(a) Custody and sale of securities

No principal underwriter for or depositor of a registered unit investment trust shall sell, except by surrender to the trustee for redemption, any security of which such trust is the issuer (other than short-term paper), unless the trust indenture, agreement of custodianship, or other instrument pursuant to which such security is issued—

(1) designates one or more trustees or custodians, each of which is a bank, and provides that each such trustee or custodian shall have at all times an aggregate capital, surplus, and undivided profits of a specified minimum amount, which shall not be less than $500,000 (but may also provide, if such trustee or custodian publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of its supervising or examining authority, that for the purposes of this paragraph the aggregate capital, surplus, and undivided profits of such trustee or custodian shall be deemed to be its aggregate capital, surplus, and undivided profits as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published);

(2) provides, in substance, (A) that during the life of the trust the trustee or custodian, if not otherwise remunerated, may charge against and collect from the income of the trust, and from the corpus thereof if no income is available, such fees for its services and such reimbursement for its expenses as are provided for in such instrument; (B) that no such charge or collection shall be made except for services theretofore performed or expenses theretofore incurred; (C) that no payment to the depositor of or a principal underwriter for such trust, or to any affiliated person or agent of such depositor or underwriter, shall be allowed the trustee or custodian as an expense (except that provision may be made for the payment to any such person of a fee, not exceeding such reasonable amount as the Commission may prescribe as compensation for performing bookkeeping and other administrative services, of a character normally performed by the trustee or custodian itself); and (D) that the trustee or custodian shall have possession of all securities and other property in which the funds of the trust are invested, all funds held for such investment, all equalization, redemption, and other special funds of the trust, and all income upon, accretions to, and proceeds of such property and funds, and shall segregate and hold the same in trust (subject only to the charges and collections allowed under clauses (A), (B), and (C) of this paragraph) until distribution thereof to the security holders of the trust;

(3) provides, in substance, that the trustee or custodian shall not resign until either (A) the trust has been completely liquidated and the proceeds of the liquidation distributed to the security holders of the trust, or (B) a successor trustee or custodian, having the qualifications prescribed in paragraph (1) of this subsection, has been designated and has accepted such trusteeship or custodianship; and

(4) provides, in substance, (A) that a record will be kept by the depositor or an agent of the depositor of the name and address of, and the shares issued by the trust and held by, every holder of any security issued pursuant to such instrument, insofar as such information is known to the depositor or agent; and (B) that whenever a security is deposited with the trustee in substitution for any security in which such security holder has an undivided interest, the

depositor or the agent of the depositor will, within five days after such substitution, either deliver or mail to such security holder a notice of substitution, including an identification of the securities eliminated and the securities substituted, and a specification of the shares of such security holder affected by the substitution.

(b) Bank or affiliated person of bank as trustee or custodian

The Commission may, after consultation with and taking into consideration the views of the Federal banking agencies (as defined in section 1813 of title 12), adopt rules and regulations, and issue orders, consistent with the protection of investors, prescribing the conditions under which a bank, or an affiliated person of a bank, either of which is an affiliated person of a principal underwriter for, or depositor of, a registered unit investment trust, may serve as trustee or custodian under subsection (a)(1).

(c) Substitution of securities

It shall be unlawful for any depositor or trustee of a registered unit investment trust holding the security of a single issuer to substitute another security for such security unless the Commission shall have approved such substitution. The Commission shall issue an order approving such substitution if the evidence establishes that it is consistent with the protection of investors and the purposes fairly intended by the policy and provisions of this subchapter.

(d) Binding contract or agreement embodying applicable provisions deemed to qualify non-complying instrument by which securities were issued

In the event that a trust indenture, agreement of custodianship, or other instrument pursuant to which securities of a registered unit investment trust are issued does not comply with the requirements of subsection (a), such instrument will be deemed to meet such requirements if a written contract or agreement binding on the parties and embodying such requirements has been executed by the depositor on the one part and the trustee or custodian on the other part, and three copies of such contract or agreement have been filed with the Commission.

(e) Liquidation of unit investment trust

Whenever the Commission has reason to believe that a unit investment trust is inactive and that its liquidation is in the interest of the security holders of such trust, the Commission may file a complaint seeking the liquidation of such trust in the district court of the United States in any district wherein any trustee of such trust resides or has its principal place of business. A copy of such complaint shall be served on every trustee of such trust, and notice of the proceeding shall be given such other interested persons in such manner and at such times as the court may direct. If the court determines that such liquidation is in the interest of the security holders of such trust, the court shall order such liquidation and, after payment of necessary expenses, the distribution of the proceeds to the security holders of the trust in such manner and on such terms as may to the court appear equitable.

(f) Exemption

(1) In general

Subsection (a) does not apply to any registered separate account funding variable insurance contracts, or to the sponsoring insurance company and principal underwriter of such account.

(2) Limitation on sales

It shall be unlawful for any registered separate account funding variable insurance contracts, or for the sponsoring insurance company of such account, to sell any such contract—

(A) unless the fees and charges deducted under the contract, in the aggregate, are reasonable in relation to the services rendered, the expenses expected to be incurred, and the risks assumed by the insurance company, and, beginning on the earlier of August 1, 1997, or the earliest effective date of any registration statement or amendment thereto for such contract following October 11, 1996, the insurance company so represents in the registration statement for the contract; and

(B) unless the insurance company—

(i) complies with all other applicable provisions of this section, as if it were a trustee or custodian of the registered separate account;

(ii) files with the insurance regulatory authority of the State which is the domiciliary State of the insurance company, an annual statement of its financial condition, which most recent statement indicates that the insurance company has a combined capital and surplus, if a stock company, or an unassigned surplus, if a mutual company, of not less than $1,000,000, or such other amount as the Commission may from time to time prescribe by rule, as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors; and

(iii) together with its registered separate accounts, is supervised and examined periodically by the insurance authority of such State.

(3) Fees and charges

For purposes of paragraph (2), the fees and charges deducted under the contract shall include all fees and charges imposed for any purpose and in any manner.

(4) Regulatory authority

The Commission may issue such rules and regulations to carry out paragraph (2)(A) as it determines are necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §26, 54 Stat. 827; Pub. L. 91–547, §15, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1424; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §§618, 619, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1262; Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §205(a), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3429; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §211(b), Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1396.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1999—Subsecs. (b) to (f). Pub. L. 106–102 added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsecs. (b) to (e) as (c) to (f), respectively.

1996—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–290 added subsec. (e).

1987—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100–181, §618, substituted "intended" for "intend".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100–181, §619, substituted "contract or agreement" for "contract of agreement".

1970—Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 91–547 added subsec. (b), redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c), struck out "at the effective date of this subchapter" before "comply", substituted "contract of agreement" for "contract or agreement", and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1999 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 106–102 effective 18 months after Nov. 12, 1999, see section 225 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–27. Periodic payment plans

(a) Sale of certificates; restrictions

It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company issuing periodic payment plan certificates, or for any depositor of or underwriter for such company, to sell any such certificate, if—

(1) the sales load on such certificate exceeds 9 per centum of the total payments to be made thereon;

(2) more than one-half of any of the first twelve monthly payments thereon, or their equivalent, is deducted for sales load;

(3) the amount of sales load deducted from any one of such first payments exceeds proportionately the amount deducted from any other such payment, or the amount deducted from any subsequent payment exceeds proportionately the amount deducted from any other subsequent payment;

(4) the first payment on such certificate is less than $20, or any subsequent payment is less than $10;

(5) if such registered company is a management company, the proceeds of such certificate or the securities in which such proceeds are invested are subject to management fees (other than fees for administrative services of the character described in clause (C), paragraph (2), of section 80a–26(a) of this title) exceeding such reasonable amount as the Commission may prescribe, whether such fees are payable to such company or to investment advisers thereof; or

(6) if such registered company is a unit investment trust the assets of which are securities issued by a management company, the depositor of or principal underwriter for such trust, or any affiliated person of such depositor or underwriter, is to receive from such management company or any affiliated person thereof any fee or payment on account of payments on such certificate exceeding such reasonable amount as the Commission may prescribe.

(b) Exemptions

If it appears to the Commission, upon application or otherwise, that smaller companies are subjected to relatively higher operating costs and that in order to make due allowance therefor it is necessary or appropriate in the public

interest and consistent with the protection of investors that a provision or provisions of paragraph (1), (2), or (3) of subsection (a) relative to sales load be relaxed in the case of certain registered investment companies issuing periodic payment plan certificates, or certain specified classes of such companies, the Commission is authorized by rules and regulations or order to grant any such company or class of companies appropriate qualified exemptions from the provisions of said paragraphs.

(c) Sale of certificates; requirements

It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company issuing periodic payment plan certificates, or for any depositor of or underwriter for such company, to sell any such certificate, unless—

(1) such certificate is a redeemable security; and

(2) the proceeds of all payments on such certificate (except such amounts as are deducted for sales load) are deposited with a trustee or custodian having the qualifications prescribed in paragraph (1) of section 80a–26(a) of this title for the trustees of unit investment trusts, and are held by such trustee or custodian under an indenture or agreement containing, in substance, the provisions required by paragraphs (2) and (3) of section 80a–26(a) of this title for the trust indentures of unit investment trusts.

(d) Surrender of certificates; regulations

Notwithstanding subsection (a) of this section, it shall be unlawful for any registered investment company issuing periodic payment plan certificates, or for any depositor of or underwriter for such company, to sell any such certificate unless the certificate provide that the holder thereof may surrender the certificate at any time within the first eighteen months after the issuance of the certificate and receive in payment thereof, in cash, the sum of (1) the value of his account, and (2) an amount, from such underwriter or depositor, equal to that part of the excess paid for sales loading which is over 15 per centum of the gross payments made by the certificate holder. The Commission may make rules and regulations applicable to such underwriters and depositors specifying such reserve requirements as it deems necessary or appropriate in order for such underwriters and depositors to carry out the obligations to refund sales charges required by this subsection.

(e) Refund privileges; notice; rules

With respect to any periodic payment plan certificate sold subject to the provisions of subsection (d) of this section, the registered investment company issuing such periodic payment plan certificate, or any depositor of or underwriter for such company, shall in writing (1) inform each certificate holder who has missed three payments or more, within thirty days following the expiration of fifteen months after the issuance of the certificate, or, if any such holder has missed one payment or more after such period of fifteen months but prior to the expiration of eighteen months after the issuance of the certificate, at any time prior to the expiration of such eighteen-month period, of his right to surrender his certificate as specified in subsection (d) of this section, and (2) inform the certificate holder of (A) the value of the holder's account as of the time the written notice was given to such holder, and (B) the amount to which he is entitled as specified in subsection (d) of this section. The Commission may make rules specifying the method, form, and contents of the notice required by this subsection.

(f) Charges, statement; rules; surrender of certificates; regulations

With respect to any periodic payment plan (other than a plan under which the amount of sales load deducted from any payment thereon does not exceed 9 per centum of such payment), the custodian bank for such plan shall mail to each certificate holder, within sixty days after the issuance of the certificate, a statement of charges to be deducted from the projected payments on the certificate and a notice of his right of withdrawal as specified in this section. The Commission may make rules specifying the method, form, and contents of the notice required by this subsection. The certificate holder may within forty-five days of the mailing of the notice specified in this subsection surrender his certificate and receive in payment thereof, in cash, the sum of (1) the value of his account, and (2) an amount, from the underwriter or depositor, equal to the difference between the gross payments made and the net amount invested. The Commission may make rules and regulations applicable to underwriters and depositors of companies issuing any such certificate specifying such reserve requirements as it deems necessary or appropriate in order for such underwriters and depositors to carry out the obligations to refund sales charges required by this subsection.

(g) Governing provisions; election

Notwithstanding the provisions of subsections (a) and (d), a registered investment company issuing periodic payment plan certificates may elect, by written notice to the Commission, to be governed by the provisions of subsection (h) rather than the provisions of subsections (a) and (d) of this section.

(h) Sale of certificates; restrictions

Upon making the election specified in subsection (g), it shall be unlawful for any such electing registered investment company issuing periodic payment plan certificates, or for any depositor of or underwriter for such company, to sell any such certificate, if—

(1) the sales load on such certificate exceeds 9 per centum of the total payments to be made thereon;

(2) more than 20 per centum of any payment thereon is deducted for sales load, or an average of more than 16 per centum is deducted for sales load from the first forty-eight monthly payments thereon, or their equivalent;

(3) the amount of sales load deducted from any one of the first twelve monthly payments, the thirteenth through twenty-fourth monthly payments, the twenty-fifth through thirty-sixth monthly payments, or the thirty-seventh through forty-eighth monthly payments, or their equivalents, respectively, exceeds proportionately the amount deducted from

any other such payment, or the amount deducted from any subsequent payment exceeds proportionately the amount deducted from any other subsequent payment;

(4) the deduction for sales load on the excess of the payment or payments in any month over the minimum monthly payment, or its equivalent, to be made on the certificate exceeds the sales load applicable to payments subsequent to the first forty-eight monthly payments or their equivalent;

(5) the first payment on such certificate is less than $20, or any subsequent payment is less than $10;

(6) if such registered company is a management company, the proceeds of such certificate or the securities in which such proceeds are invested are subject to management fees (other than fees for administrative services of the character described in clause (C) of paragraph (2) of section 80a–26(a) of this title) exceeding such reasonable amount as the Commission may prescribe, whether such fees are payable to such company or to investment advisers thereof; or

(7) if such registered company is a unit investment trust the assets of which are securities issued by a management company, the depositor of or principal underwriter for such trust, or any affiliated person of such depositor or underwriter, is to receive from such management company or any affiliated person thereof any fee or payment on account of payments on such certificate exceeding such reasonable amount as the Commission may prescribe.

(i) Applicability to registered separate account funding variable insurance contracts

(1) This section does not apply to any registered separate account funding variable insurance contracts, or to the sponsoring insurance company and principal underwriter of such account, except as provided in paragraph (2).

(2) It shall be unlawful for any registered separate account funding variable insurance contracts, or for the sponsoring insurance company of such account, to sell any such contract unless—

(A) such contract is a redeemable security; and

(B) the insurance company complies with section 80a–26(f) of this title and any rules or regulations issued by the Commission under section 80a–26(f) of this title.

(j) Termination of sales

(1) Termination

Effective 30 days after September 29, 2006, it shall be unlawful, subject to subsection (i)—

(A) for any registered investment company to issue any periodic payment plan certificate; or

(B) for such company, or any depositor of or underwriter for any such company, or any other person, to sell such a certificate.

(2) No invalidation of existing certificates

Paragraph (1) shall not be construed to alter, invalidate, or otherwise affect any rights or obligations, including rights of redemption, under any periodic payment plan certificate issued and sold before 30 days after September 29, 2006.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §27, 54 Stat. 829; Pub. L. 91–547, §16, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1424; Pub. L. 92–165, Nov. 23, 1971, 85 Stat. 487; Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §205(b), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3429; Pub. L. 109–290, §4(a), (b), Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1318, 1319.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

2006—Subsec. (i)(2)(B). Pub. L. 109–290, §4(b), substituted "section 80a–26(f)" for "section 80a–26(e)" in two places.

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 109–290, §4(a), added subsec. (j).

1996—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 104–290 added subsec. (i).

1971—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 92–165 inserted "(other than a plan under which the amount of sales load deducted from any payment thereon does not exceed 9 per centum of such payment)".

1970—Subsecs. (d) to (h). Pub. L. 91–547 added subsecs. (d) to (h).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective on expiration of six months after Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30(3) of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–28. Face-amount certificate companies

(a) Issuance or sale of certificates

It shall be unlawful for any registered face-amount certificate company to issue or sell any face-amount certificate, or to collect or accept any payment on any such certificate issued by such company on or after the effective date of this subchapter, unless—

(1) such company, if organized before March 15, 1940, was actively and continuously engaged in selling face-amount certificates on and before that date, and has outstanding capital stock worth upon a fair valuation of assets not less than $50,000; or if organized on or after March 15, 1940, has capital stock in an amount not less than $250,000 which has been bona fide subscribed and paid for in cash; and

(2) such company maintains at all times minimum certificate reserves on all its outstanding face-amount certificates in an aggregate amount calculated and adjusted as follows:

(A) the reserves for each certificate of the installment type shall be based on assumed annual, semi-annual, quarterly, or monthly reserve payments according to the manner in which gross payments for any certificate year are made by the holder, which reserve payments shall be sufficient in amount, as and when accumulated at a rate not to exceed 3½ per centum per annum compounded annually, to provide the minimum maturity or face amount of the certificate when due. Such reserve payments may be graduated according to certificate years so that the reserve payment or payments for the first certificate year shall amount to at least 50 per centum of the required gross annual payment for such year and the reserve payment or payments for each of the second to fifth certificate years inclusive shall amount to at least 93 per centum of each such year's required gross annual payment and for the sixth and each subsequent certificate year the reserve payment or payments shall amount to at least 96 per centum of each such year's required gross annual payment: *Provided*, That such aggregate reserve payments shall amount to at least 93 per centum of the aggregate gross annual payments required to be made by the holder to obtain the maturity of the certificate. The company may at its option take as loading from the gross payment or payments for a certificate year, as and when made by the certificate holder, an amount or amounts equal in the aggregate for such year to not more than the excess, if any, of the gross payment or payments required to be made by the holder for such year, over and above the percentage of the gross annual payment required herein for such year for reserve purposes. Such loading may be taken by the company prior to or after the setting up of the reserve payment or payments for such year and the reserve payment or payments for such year may be graduated and adjusted to correspond with the amount of the gross payment or payments made by the certificate holder for such year less the loading so taken;

(B) if the foregoing minimum percentages of the gross annual payments required under the provisions of such certificate should produce reserve payments larger than are necessary at 3½ per centum per annum compounded annually to provide the minimum maturity or face amount of the certificate when due, the reserve shall be based upon reserve payments accumulated as provided under preceding subparagraph (A) of this paragraph except that in lieu of the 3½ per centum rate specified therein, such rate shall be lowered to the minimum rate, expressed in multiples of one-eighth of 1 per centum, which will accumulate such reserve payments to the maturity value when due;

(C) if the actual annual gross payment to be made by the certificate holder on any certificate issued prior to or after the effective date of this chapter is less than the amount of any assumed reserve payment or payments for a certificate year, such company shall maintain as a part of such minimum certificate reserves a deficiency reserve equal to the total present value of future deficiencies in the gross payments, calculated at a rate not to exceed 3½ per centum per annum compounded annually;

(D) for each certificate of the installment type the amount of the reserve shall at any time be at least equal to (1) the then amount of the reserve payments set up under subparagraphs (A) or (B) of this paragraph; (2) the accumulations on such reserve payments as computed under subparagraphs (A) or (B) of this paragraph; (3) the amount of any deficiency reserve required under subparagraph (C) of this paragraph; and (4) such amount as shall have been credited to the account of each certificate holder in the form of any credit, or any dividend, or any interest in addition to the minimum maturity amount specified in such certificate, plus any accumulations on any amount or amounts so credited, at a rate not exceeding 3½ per centum per annum compounded annually;

(E) for each certificate which is fully paid, including any fully paid obligations resulting from or effected upon the maturity of the previously issued certificate, and for each paid-up certificate issued as provided in subsection (f) of this section prior to maturity, the amount of the reserve shall at any time be at least equal to (1) such amount as and when accumulated at a rate not to exceed 3½ per centum per annum compounded annually, will provide the amount or amounts payable when due and (2) such amount as shall have been credited to the account of each such certificate holder in the form of any credit, or any dividend, or any interest in addition to the minimum maturity amount specified in the certificate, plus any accumulations on any amount or amounts so credited, at a rate not exceeding 3½ per centum per annum compounded annually;

(F) for each certificate of the installment type under which gross payments have been made by or credited to the holder thereof covering a payment period or periods or any part thereof beyond the then current payment period as defined by the terms of such certificate, and for which period or periods no reserve has been set up under subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph, an advance payment reserve shall be set up and maintained in the amount of the present value of any such unapplied advance gross payments, computed at a rate not to exceed 3½ per centum per annum compounded annually;

(G) such appropriate contingency reserves for death and disability benefits and for reinstatement rights on any such certificate providing for such benefits or rights as the Commission shall prescribe by rule, regulation, or order based upon the experience of face-amount companies in relation to such contingencies.

At no time shall the aggregate certificate reserves herein required by subparagraphs (A) to (F) of this paragraph, be less than the aggregate surrender values and other amounts to which all certificate holders may be then entitled.

For the purpose of this subsection, no certificate of the installment type shall be deemed to be outstanding if before a surrender value has been attained the holder thereof has been in continuous default in making his payments thereon for a period of one year.

(b) Asset requirements prior to sale of certificates

It shall be unlawful for any registered face-amount certificate company to issue or sell any face-amount certificate, or to collect or accept any payment on any such certificate issued by such company on or after the effective date of this subchapter, unless such company has, in cash or qualified investments, assets having a value not less than the aggregate amount of the capital stock requirement and certificate reserves as computed under the provisions of subsection (a) hereof. As used in this subsection, "qualified investments" means investments of a kind which life-insurance companies are permitted to invest in or hold under the provisions of the Code of the District of Columbia as heretofore or hereafter amended, and such other investments as the Commission shall by rule, regulation, or order authorize as qualified investments. Such investments shall be valued in accordance with the provisions of said Code where such provisions are applicable. Investments to which such provisions do not apply shall be valued in accordance with such rules, regulations, or orders as the Commission shall prescribe for the protection of investors.

(c) Certificate reserve requirements

The Commission shall by rule, regulation, or order, in the public interest or for the protection of investors, require a registered face-amount certificate company to deposit and maintain, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission shall prescribe and as are appropriate for the protection of investors, with one or more institutions having the qualifications required by paragraph (1) of section 80a–26(a) of this title for a trustee of a unit investment trust, all or any part of the investments maintained by such company as certificate reserve requirements under the provisions of subsection (b) hereof: *Provided, however*, That where qualified investments are maintained on deposit by such company in respect of its liabilities under certificates issued to or held by residents of any State as required by the statute of such State or by any order, regulation, or requirement of such State or any official or agency thereof, the amount so on deposit, but not to exceed the amount of reserves required by subsection (a) hereof for the certificates so issued or held, shall be deducted from the amount of qualified investments that may be required to be deposited hereunder.

Assets which are qualified investments under subsection (b) and which are deposited under or as permitted by this subsection, may be used and shall be considered as a part of the assets required to be maintained under the provisions of said subsection (b).

(d) Provisions required in certificate

It shall be unlawful for any registered face-amount certificate company to issue or sell any face-amount certificate, or to collect or accept any payment on any such certificate issued by such company on or after the effective date of this subchapter, unless such certificate contains a provision or provisions to the effect—

(1) that, in respect of any certificate of the installment type, during the first certificate year the holder of the certificate, upon surrender thereof, shall be entitled to a value payable in cash not less than the reserve payments as specified in subparagraph (A) or (B) of paragraph (2) of subsection (a) and at the end of such certificate year, a value payable in cash at least equal to 50 per centum of the amount of the gross annual payment required thereby for such year;

(2) that, in respect of any certificate of the installment type, at any time after the expiration of the first certificate year and prior to maturity, the holder of the certificate, upon surrender thereof, shall be entitled to a value payable in cash not less than the then amount of the reserve for such certificate required by numbered items (1) and (2) of subparagraph (D) of paragraph (2) of subsection (a) hereof, less a surrender charge that shall not exceed 2 per centum of the face or maturity amount of the certificate, or 15 per centum of the amount of such reserve, whichever is the lesser, but in no event shall such value be less than 50 per centum of the amount of such reserve. The amount of the surrender value for the end of each certificate year shall be set out in the certificate;

(3) that, in respect of any certificate of the installment type, the holder of the certificate, upon surrender thereof for cash or upon receipt of a paid-up certificate as provided in subsection (f) hereof, shall be entitled to a value payable in cash equal to the then amount of any advance payment reserve under such certificate required by subparagraph (F) of paragraph (2) of subsection (a) hereof in addition to any other amounts due the holder hereunder;

(4) that at any time prior to maturity, in respect of any certificate which is fully paid, the holder of the certificate, upon surrender thereof, shall be entitled to a value payable in cash not less than the then amount of the reserve for

such certificate required by item (1) of subparagraph (E) of paragraph (2) of subsection (a) hereof, less a surrender charge that shall not exceed 2 per centum of the face or maturity amount of the certificate, or 15 per centum of the amount of such reserve, whichever is the lesser: *Provided, however*, That such surrender charge shall not apply as to any obligations of a fully paid type resulting from the maturity of a previously issued certificate. The amount of the surrender value for the end of each certificate year shall be set out in the certificate;

(5) that in respect of any certificate, the holder of the certificate, upon maturity, upon surrender thereof for cash or upon receipt of a paid-up certificate as provided in subsection (f) hereof, shall be entitled to a value payable in cash equal to the then amount of the reserve, if any, for such certificate required by item (4) of subparagraph (D) of paragraph (2) of subsection (a) hereof or item (2) of subparagraph (E) of paragraph (2) of said subsection (a) in addition to any other amounts due the holder hereunder.

The term "certificate year" as used in this section in respect of any certificate of the installment type means a period or periods for which one year's payment or payments as provided by the certificate have been made thereon by the holder and the certificate maintained in force by such payments for the time for which the same have been made, and in respect of any certificate which is fully paid or paid-up means any year ending on the anniversary of the date of issuance of the certificate.

Any certificate may provide for loans or advances by the company to the certificate holder on the security of such certificate upon terms prescribed therein but at an interest rate not exceeding 6 per centum per annum. The amount of the required reserves, deposits, and the surrender values thereof available to the holder may be adjusted to take into account any unpaid balance on such loans or advances and interest thereon, for the purposes of this subsection and subsections (b) and (c) hereof.

Any certificate may provide that the company at its option may, prior to the maturity thereof, defer any payment or payments to the certificate holder to which he may be entitled under this subsection, for a period of not more than thirty days: *Provided*, That in the event such option is exercised by the company, interest shall accrue on any payment or payments due to the holder, for the period of such deferment at a rate equal to that used in accumulating the reserves for such certificate: *And provided further*, That the Commission may, by rules and regulations or orders in the public interest or for the protection of investors, make provision for any other deferment upon such terms and conditions as it shall prescribe.

(e) Liability of holder to legal action for unpaid amount of certificate

It shall be unlawful for any registered face-amount certificate company to issue or sell any face-amount certificate, or to collect or accept any payment on any such certificate issued by such company on or after the effective date of this subchapter, which certificate makes the holder liable to any legal action or proceeding for any unpaid amount on such certificate.

(f) Optional right to paid up certificate in lieu of cash surrender value

It shall be unlawful for any registered face-amount certificate company to issue or sell any face-amount certificate, or to collect or accept any payment on any such certificate issued by such company on or after the effective date of this subchapter, (1) unless such face-amount certificate contains a provision or provisions to the effect that the holder shall have an optional right to receive a paid-up certificate in lieu of the then attained cash surrender value provided therein and in the amount of such value plus accumulations thereon at a rate to be specified in the paid-up certificate equal to that used in computing the reserve on the original certificate under subparagraph (A) or (B) of paragraph (2) of subsection (a) of this section, such paid-up certificate to become due and payable at the end of a period equal to the balance of the term of such original certificate before maturity; and during the period prior to maturity such paid-up certificate shall have a cash value upon surrender thereof equal to the then amount of the reserve therefor; and (2) unless such face-amount certificate contains a further provision or provisions to the effect that if the holder be in continuous default in his payments on such certificate for a period of six months without having exercised his option to receive a paid-up certificate, as herein provided, the company at the expiration of such six months shall pay the surrender value in cash if such value is less than $100 or if such value is $100 or more shall issue such paid-up certificate to such holder and such payment or issuance, plus the payment of all other amounts to which he may be then entitled under the original certificate, shall operate to cancel his original certificate: *Provided*, That in lieu of the issuance of a new paid-up certificate the original certificate may be converted into a paid-up certificate with the same effect; and (3) unless, where such certificate provides, in the event of default, for the deferment of payments thereon by the holder or of the due dates of such payments or of the maturity date of the certificate, it shall also provide in effect for the right of reinstatement by the holder of the certificate after default and for an option in the holder, at the time of reinstatement, to make up the payment or payments for the default period next preceding such reinstatement with interest thereon not exceeding 6 per centum per annum, with the same effect as if no such default in making such payments had occurred.

The term "default" as used in this subsection shall, without restricting its usual meaning, include a failure to make a payment or payments as and when provided by the certificate.

(g) Application of section to company issuing certificates only to holders of previously issued certificates

The foregoing provisions of this section shall not apply to a face-amount certificate company which on or before the effective date of this chapter has discontinued the offering of face-amount certificates to the public and issues face-amount certificates only to the holders of certificates previously issued pursuant to an obligation expressed or implied in such certificates.

(h) Declaration or payment of dividends

It shall be unlawful for any registered face-amount certificate company which does not maintain the minimum certificate reserve on all its outstanding face-amount certificates issued prior to the effective date of this chapter, in an aggregate amount calculated and adjusted as provided in this section to declare or pay any dividends on the shares of such company for or during any calendar year which shall exceed one-third of the net earnings for the next preceding calendar year or which shall exceed 10 per centum of the aggregate net earnings for the next preceding five calendar years, whichever is the lesser amount, or any dividend which shall have been forbidden by the Commission pursuant to the provision of the next sentence of this paragraph. At least thirty days before such company shall declare, pay, or distribute any dividend, it shall give the Commission written notice of its intention to declare, pay, or distribute the same; and if at any time it shall appear to the Commission that the declaration, payment or distribution of any dividend for or during any calendar year might impair the financial integrity of such company or its ability to meet its liabilities under its outstanding face-amount certificates, it may by order forbid the declaration, distribution, or payment of any such dividend.

(i) Application of section to certificates issued prior to effective date of section

The foregoing provisions of this section shall apply to all face-amount certificates issued prior to the effective date of this subsection; to the collection or acceptance of any payment on such certificates; to the issuance of face-amount certificates to the holders of such certificates pursuant to an obligation expressed or implied in such certificates; to the provisions of such certificates; to the minimum certificate reserves and deposits maintained with respect thereto; and to the assets that the issuer of such certificate was and is required to have with respect to such certificates. With respect to all face-amount certificates issued after the effective date of this subsection, the provisions of this section shall apply except as hereinafter provided.

(1) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A) of paragraph (2) of subsection (a), the reserves for each certificate of the installment type shall be based on assumed annual, semiannual, quarterly, or monthly reserve payments according to the manner in which gross payments for any certificate year are made by the holder, which reserve payments shall be sufficient in amount, as and when accumulated at a rate not to exceed 3½ per centum per annum compounded annually, to provide the minimum maturity or face amount of the certificate when due. Such reserve payments may be graduated according to certificate years so that the reserve payment or payments for the first three certificate years shall amount to at least 80 per centum of the required gross annual payment for such years; the reserve payment or payments for the fourth certificate year shall amount to at least 90 per centum of such year's required gross annual payment; the reserve payment or payments for the fifth certificate year shall amount to at least 93 per centum of such year's gross annual payment; and for the sixth and each subsequent certificate year the reserve payment or payments shall amount to at least 96 per centum of each such year's required gross annual payment: *Provided*, That such aggregate reserve payments shall amount to at least 93 per centum of the aggregate gross annual payments required to be made by the holder to obtain the maturity of the certificate. The company may at its option take as loading from the gross payment or payments for a certificate year, as and when made by the certificate holder, an amount or amounts equal in the aggregate for such year to not more than the excess, if any, of the gross payment or payments required to be made by the holder for such year, over and above the percentage of the gross annual payment required herein for such year for reserve purposes. Such loading may be taken by the company prior to or after the setting up of the reserve payment or payments for such year and the reserve payment or payments for such year may be graduated and adjusted to correspond with the amount of the gross payment or payments made by the certificate holder for such year less the loading so taken.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (d), (A) in respect of any certificate of the installment type, during the first certificate year, the holder of the certificate, upon surrender thereof, shall be entitled to a value payable in cash not less than 80 per centum of the amount of the gross payments made on the certificate; and (B) in respect of any certificate of the installment type, at any time after the expiration of the first certificate year and prior to maturity, the holder of the certificate, upon surrender thereof, shall be entitled to a value payable in cash not less than the then amount of the reserve for such certificate required by clauses (1) and (2) of subparagraph (D) of paragraph (2) of subsection (a), less a surrender charge that shall not exceed 2 per centum of the face or maturity amount of the certificate, or 15 per centum of the amount of such reserve, whichever is the lesser, but in no event shall such value be less than 80 per centum of the gross payments made on the certificate. The amount of the surrender value for the end of each certificate year shall be set out in the certificate.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §28, 54 Stat. 829; Pub. L. 91–547, §17, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1426; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §§620, 621, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1262.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

For the effective date of this subchapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b), (d), (e), and (f), see section 80a–52 of this title.

For the effective date of this chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2)(C), (g), and (h), see sections 80a–52 and 80b–21 of this title.

For the effective date of this subsection, referred to in subsec. (i), as the day upon expiration of 6 months after Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30(3) of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Amendments

1987—Subsec. (a)(2)(B). Pub. L. 100–181, §620, substituted "paragraph" for "subsection".
Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 100–181, §621, inserted "of" before "subsection (a)".
1970—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 91–547 added subsec. (i).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective on expiration of six months after Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30(3) of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–2 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–29. Reports and financial statements of investment companies and affiliated persons

(a) Annual report by company

Every registered investment company shall file annually with the Commission such information, documents, and reports as investment companies having securities registered on a national securities exchange are required to file annually pursuant to section 13(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m(a)] and the rules and regulations issued thereunder.

(b) Semi-annual or quarterly filing of information; copies of periodic or interim reports sent to security holders

Every registered investment company shall file with the Commission—

(1) such information, documents, and reports (other than financial statements), as the Commission may require to keep reasonably current the information and documents contained in the registration statement of such company filed under this subchapter; and

(2) copies of every periodic or interim report or similar communication containing financial statements and transmitted to any class of such company's security holders, such copies to be filed not later than ten days after such transmission.

Any information or documents contained in a report or other communication to security holders filed pursuant to paragraph (2) of this subsection may be incorporated by reference in any report subsequently or concurrently filed pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(c) Minimizing reporting burdens

(1) The Commission shall take such action as it deems necessary or appropriate, consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, to avoid unnecessary reporting by, and minimize the compliance burdens on, registered investment companies and their affiliated persons in exercising its authority—

(A) under subsection (f); and

(B) under subsection (b)(1), if the Commission requires the filing of information, documents, and reports under that subsection on a basis more frequently than semiannually.

(2) Action taken by the Commission under paragraph (1) shall include considering, and requesting public comment on—

(A) feasible alternatives that minimize the reporting burdens on registered investment companies; and

(B) the utility of such information, documents, and reports to the Commission in relation to the costs to registered investment companies and their affiliated persons of providing such information, documents, and reports.

(d) Reports under this section in lieu of reports under other provisions of law

The Commission shall issue rules and regulations permitting the filing with the Commission, and with any national securities exchange concerned, of copies of periodic reports, or of extracts therefrom, filed by any registered investment company pursuant to subsections (a) and (b), in lieu of any reports and documents required of such company under section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m or 78o(d)].

(e) Semiannual reports to stockholders

Every registered investment company shall transmit to its stockholders, at least semiannually, reports containing such of the following information and financial statements or their equivalent, as of a reasonably current date, as the Commission may prescribe by rules and regulations for the protection of investors, which reports shall not be misleading in any material respect in the light of the reports required to be filed pursuant to subsections (a) and (b):

(1) a balance sheet accompanied by a statement of the aggregate value of investments on the date of such balance sheet;

(2) a list showing the amounts and values of securities owned on the date of such balance sheet;

(3) a statement of income, for the period covered by the report, which shall be itemized at least with respect to each category of income and expense representing more than 5 per centum of total income or expense;

(4) a statement of surplus, which shall be itemized at least with respect to each charge or credit to the surplus account which represents more than 5 per centum of the total charges or credits during the period covered by the report;

(5) a statement of the aggregate remuneration paid by the company during the period covered by the report (A) to all directors and to all members of any advisory board for regular compensation; (B) to each director and to each member of an advisory board for special compensation; (C) to all officers; and (D) to each person of whom any officer or director of the company is an affiliated person; and

(6) a statement of the aggregate dollar amounts of purchases and sales of investment securities, other than Government securities, made during the period covered by the report:

Provided, That if in the judgment of the Commission any item required under this subsection is inapplicable or inappropriate to any specified type or types of investment company, the Commission may by rules and regulations permit in lieu thereof the inclusion of such item of a comparable character as it may deem applicable or appropriate to such type or types of investment company.

(f) Additional information

The Commission may, by rule, require that semiannual reports containing the information set forth in subsection (e) include such other information as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(g) Certificate of independent public accountants

Financial statements contained in annual reports required pursuant to subsections (a) and (e), if required by the rules and regulations of the Commission, shall be accompanied by a certificate of independent public accountants. The certificate of such independent public accountants shall be based upon an audit not less in scope or procedures followed than that which independent public accountants would ordinarily make for the purpose of presenting comprehensive and dependable financial statements, and shall contain such information as the Commission may prescribe, by rules and regulations in the public interest or for the protection of investors, as to the nature and scope of the audit and the findings and opinion of the accountants. Each such report shall state that such independent public accountants have verified securities owned, either by actual examination, or by receipt of a certificate from the custodian, as the Commission may prescribe by rules and regulations.

(h) Duties and liabilities of affiliated persons

Every person who is directly or indirectly the beneficial owner of more than 10 per centum of any class of outstanding securities (other than short-term paper) of which a registered closed-end company is the issuer or who is an officer, director, member of an advisory board, investment adviser, or affiliated person of an investment adviser of such a company shall in respect of his transactions in any securities of such company (other than short-term paper) be subject to the same duties and liabilities as those imposed by section 16 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78p] upon certain beneficial owners, directors, and officers in respect of their transactions in certain equity securities.

(i) Disclosure to church plan participants

A person that maintains a church plan that is excluded from the definition of an investment company solely by reason of section 80a–3(c)(14) of this title shall provide disclosure to plan participants, in writing, and not less frequently than annually, and for new participants joining such a plan after May 31, 1996, as soon as is practicable after joining such plan, that—

(1) the plan, or any company or account maintained to manage or hold plan assets and interests in such plan, company, or account, are not subject to registration, regulation, or reporting under this subchapter, the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], or State securities laws; and

(2) plan participants and beneficiaries therefore will not be afforded the protections of those provisions.

(j) Notice to Commission

The Commission may issue rules and regulations to require any person that maintains a church plan that is excluded from the definition of an investment company solely by reason of section 80a–3(c)(14) of this title to file a notice with the Commission containing such information and in such form as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or consistent with the protection of investors.

(k) Data standards for reports

(1) Requirement

The Commission shall, by rule, adopt data standards for all reports required to be filed with the Commission under this section, except that the Commission may exempt exhibits, signatures, and certifications from those data standards.

(2) Consistency

The data standards required under paragraph (1) shall incorporate, and ensure compatibility with (to the extent feasible), all applicable data standards established in the rules promulgated under section 5334 of title 12, including, to the extent practicable, by having the characteristics described in clauses (i) through (vi) of subsection (c)(1)(B) of such section 5334.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §30, 54 Stat. 836; Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §206, title V, §508(g), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3430, 3449; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(c)(5), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3237; Pub. L. 117–263, div. E, title LVIII, §5821(b)(2), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3425.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (i)(1), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (i)(1), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified principally to chapter 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

Amendments

2022—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 117–263 added subsec. (k).

1998—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 105–353, §301(c)(5)(A), inserted "and" after semicolon at end.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 105–353, §301(c)(5)(B), substituted "semiannually" for "semi-annually" in introductory provisions.

Subsecs. (g) to (j). Pub. L. 105–353, §301(c)(5)(C), redesignated subsecs. (g) and (h), relating to disclosure to church plan participants and notice to Commission, respectively, as (i) and (j), respectively.

1996—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 104–290, §206(1), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "such information and documents (other than financial statements) as the Commission may require, on a semi-annual or quarterly basis, to keep reasonably current the information and documents contained in the registration statement of such company filed under this subchapter; and".

Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 104–290, §206(2), (3), added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsecs. (c) and (d) as (d) and (e), respectively. Former subsec. (e) redesignated (g).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–290, §206(2), (4), added subsec. (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (h).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 104–290, §508(g), added subsec. (g), relating to disclosure to church plan participants.

Pub. L. 104–290, §206(2), (5), redesignated subsec. (e), relating to certificate of independent public accountants, as (g), and substituted "pursuant to subsections (a) and (e)" for "pursuant to subsections (a) and (d)".

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 104–290, §508(g), added subsec. (h), relating to notice to Commission.

Pub. L. 104–290, §206(2), redesignated subsec. (f), relating to duties and liabilities of affiliated persons, as (h).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Rule of Construction—No New Disclosure Requirements

Amendment by Pub. L. 117–263 not to be construed to require certain additional information to be collected or disclosed, see section 5826 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 77g of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–30. Accounts and records

(a) Maintenance of records

(1) In general

Each registered investment company, and each underwriter, broker, dealer, or investment adviser that is a majority-owned subsidiary of such a company, shall maintain and preserve such records (as defined in section 78c(a)(37) of this title) for such period or periods as the Commission, by rules and regulations, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Each investment adviser that is not a majority-owned subsidiary of, and each depositor of any registered investment company, and each principal underwriter for any registered investment company other than a closed-end company, shall maintain and preserve for such period or periods as the Commission shall prescribe by rules and regulations, such records as are necessary or appropriate to record such person's transactions with such registered company. Each person having custody or use of the securities, deposits, or credits of a registered investment company shall maintain and preserve all records that relate to the custody or use by such person of the securities, deposits, or credits of the registered investment company for such period or periods as the Commission, by rule or regulation, may prescribe, as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(2) Minimizing compliance burden

In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall take such steps as it deems necessary or appropriate, consistent with the public interest and for the protection of investors, to avoid unnecessary recordkeeping by, and minimize the compliance burden on, persons required to maintain records under this subsection (hereafter in this section referred to as "subject persons"). Such steps shall include considering, and requesting public comment on—

(A) feasible alternatives that minimize the recordkeeping burdens on subject persons;

(B) the necessity of such records in view of the public benefits derived from the independent scrutiny of such records through Commission examination;

(C) the costs associated with maintaining the information that would be required to be reflected in such records; and

(D) the effects that a proposed recordkeeping requirement would have on internal compliance policies and procedures.

(b) Examinations of records

(1) In general

All records required to be maintained and preserved in accordance with subsection (a) shall be subject at any time and from time to time to such reasonable periodic, special, and other examinations by the Commission, or any member or representative thereof, as the Commission may prescribe.

(2) Availability

For purposes of examinations referred to in paragraph (1), any subject person shall make available to the Commission or its representatives any copies or extracts from such records as may be prepared without undue effort, expense, or delay as the Commission or its representatives may reasonably request.

(3) Commission action

The Commission shall exercise its authority under this subsection with due regard for the benefits of internal compliance policies and procedures and the effective implementation and operation thereof.

(4) Records of persons with custody or use

(A) In general

Records of persons having custody or use of the securities, deposits, or credits of a registered investment company that relate to such custody or use, are subject at any time, or from time to time, to such reasonable periodic, special, or other examinations and other information and document requests by representatives of the Commission, as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(B) Certain persons subject to other regulation

Any person that is subject to regulation and examination by a Federal financial institution regulatory agency (as such term is defined under section 212(c)(2) of title 18) may satisfy any examination request, information request, or document request described under subparagraph (A), by providing to the Commission a detailed listing, in writing, of the securities, deposits, or credits of the registered investment company within the custody or use of such person.

(c) Regulatory authority

The Commission may, in the public interest or for the protection of investors, issue rules and regulations providing for a reasonable degree of uniformity in the accounting policies and principles to be followed by registered investment companies in maintaining their accounting records and in preparing financial statements required pursuant to this subchapter.

(d) Exemption authority

The Commission, upon application made by any registered investment company, may by order exempt a specific transaction or transactions from the provisions of any rule or regulation made pursuant to subsection (e), if the Commission finds that such rule or regulation should not reasonably be applied to such transaction.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §31, 54 Stat. 838; Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §207, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3430; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(c)(6), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3237; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §§929I(b), 929Q(a), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1858, 1865; Pub. L. 111–257, §1(b), Oct. 5, 2010, 124 Stat. 2646.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

2010—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–203, §929Q(a)(1), inserted at end "Each person having custody or use of the securities, deposits, or credits of a registered investment company shall maintain and preserve all records that relate to the custody or use by such person of the securities, deposits, or credits of the registered investment company for such period or periods as the Commission, by rule or regulation, may prescribe, as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors."

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 111–203, §929Q(a)(2), added par. (4).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–257 redesignated subsec. (d) as (c) and struck out former subsec. (c). Prior to amendment, text of subsec. (c) read as follows: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose any records or information provided to the Commission under this section, or records or information based upon or derived from such records or information, if such records or information have been obtained by the Commission for use in furtherance of the purposes of this subchapter, including surveillance, risk assessments, or other regulatory and oversight activities. Nothing in this subsection authorizes the Commission to withhold information from the Congress or prevent the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of jurisdiction of that department or agency, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this section shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552. Collection of information pursuant to this section shall be an administrative action involving an agency against specific individuals or agencies pursuant to section 3518(c)(1) of title 44."

Pub. L. 111–203, §929I(b)(1), added subsec. (c) and struck out former subsec. (c). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose any internal compliance or audit records, or information contained therein, provided to the Commission under this section. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from the Congress or prevent the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of the jurisdiction of that department or agency, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this section shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–257, §1(b)(2), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d). Former subsec. (d) redesignated (c).

Pub. L. 111–203, §929I(b)(2), (3), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d) and struck out former subsec. (d) which defined "internal compliance policies and procedures" and "internal compliance and audit record" for purposes of this section.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–257, §1(b)(2), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d).

Pub. L. 111–203, §929I(b)(3), redesignated subsec. (f) as (e). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (d).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–203, §929I(b)(3), redesignated subsec. (f) as (e).

1998—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted "subsection (e)" for "subsection (c)".

1996—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 104–290, §207(1), added subsecs. (a) and (b) and struck out former subsecs. (a) and (b) which read as follows:

"(a) Every registered investment company, and every underwriter, broker, dealer, or investment adviser which is a majority-owned subsidiary of such a company, shall maintain and preserve for such period or periods as the Commission may prescribe by rules and regulations, such accounts, books, and other documents as constitute the record forming the basis for financial statements required to be filed pursuant to section 80a–29 of this title, and of the auditor's certificates relating thereto. Every investment adviser not a majority-owned subsidiary of, and every depositor of any registered investment company, and every principal underwriter for any registered investment company other than a closed-end company, shall maintain and preserve for such period or periods as the Commission shall prescribe by rules and regulations, such accounts, books, and other documents as are necessary or appropriate to record such person's transactions with such registered company.

"(b) All accounts, books, and other records, required to be maintained and preserved by any person pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, shall be subject at any time and from time to time to such reasonable periodic, special, and other examinations by the Commission, or any member or representative thereof, as the Commission may prescribe. Any such person shall furnish to the Commission, within such reasonable time as the Commission may prescribe, copies of or extracts from such records which may be prepared without undue effort, expense, or delay, as the Commission may by order require."

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 104–290, §207(3), added subsecs. (c) and (d). Former subsecs. (c) and (d) redesignated (e) and (f), respectively.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–290, §207(2), (4), redesignated subsec. (c) as (e) and inserted heading.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–290, §207(2), (5), redesignated subsec. (d) as (f) and inserted heading.

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–31. Accountants and auditors

(a) Selection of accountant

It shall be unlawful for any registered management company or registered face-amount certificate company to file with the Commission any financial statement signed or certified by an independent public accountant, unless—

(1) such accountant shall have been selected at a meeting held within thirty days before or after the beginning of the fiscal year or before the annual meeting of stockholders in that year by the vote, cast in person, of a majority of those members of the board of directors who are not interested persons of such registered company;

(2) such selection shall have been submitted for ratification or rejection at the next succeeding annual meeting of stockholders if such meeting be held, except that any vacancy occurring between annual meetings, due to the death or resignation of the accountant, may be filled by the vote of a majority of those members of the board of directors who are not interested persons of such registered company, cast in person at a meeting called for the purpose of voting on such action;

(3) the employment of such accountant shall have been conditioned upon the right of the company by vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities at any meeting called for the purpose to terminate such employment forthwith without any penalty; and

(4) such certificate or report of such accountant shall be addressed both to the board of directors of such registered company and to the security holders thereof.

If the selection of an accountant has been rejected pursuant to paragraph (2) or his employment terminated pursuant to paragraph (3), the vacancy so occurring may be filled by a vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities,

either at the meeting at which the rejection or termination occurred or, if not so filled, at a subsequent meeting which shall be called for the purpose. In the case of a common-law trust of the character described in section 80a–16(c) of this title, no ratification of the employment of such accountant shall be required but such employment may be terminated and such accountant removed by action of the holders of record of a majority of the outstanding shares of beneficial interest in such trust in the same manner as is provided in section 80a–16(c) of this title in respect of the removal of a trustee, and all the provisions therein contained as to the calling of a meeting shall be applicable. In the event of such termination and removal, the vacancy so occurring may be filled by action of the holders of record of a majority of the shares of beneficial interest either at the meeting, if any, at which such termination and removal occurs, or by instruments in writing filed with the custodian, or if not so filed within a reasonable time then at a subsequent meeting which shall be called by the trustees for the purpose. The provisions of paragraph (42) of section 80a–2(a) of this title as to a majority shall be applicable to the vote cast at any meeting of the shareholders of such a trust held pursuant to this subsection.

(b) Selection of controller or other principal accounting officer

No registered management company or registered face-amount certificate company shall file with the Commission any financial statement in the preparation of which the controller or other principal accounting officer or employee of such company participated, unless such controller, officer or employee was selected, either by vote of the holders of such company's voting securities at the last annual meeting of such security holders, or by the board of directors of such company.

(c) Reports of accountants and auditors

The Commission is authorized, by rules and regulations or order in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to require accountants and auditors to keep reports, work sheets, and other documents and papers relating to registered investment companies for such period or periods as the Commission may prescribe, and to make the same available for inspection by the Commission or any member or representative thereof.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §32, 54 Stat. 838; Pub. L. 91–547, §18, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1427; Pub. L. 94–29, §28(4), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 165.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29 substituted "section 80a–16(c) of this title" for "section 80a–16(b) of this title".

1970—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91–547 struck out introductory text "After one year from the effective date of this subchapter," and substituted "It" for "it"; inserted "the vote, cast in person, of" before "a majority" and substituted "interested persons of" for "investment advisers of, or affiliated persons of an investment adviser of, or officers or employees of," in par. (1); inserted "the vote of a majority of those members of" before "the board of directors" and "who are not interested persons of such registered company, cast in person at a meeting called for the purpose of voting on such action" after "the board of directors" in par. (2); substituted period for colon in par. (4); and in text after par. (4), substituted "if not so filled," for "if not so filled then" and "if not so filed" for "if not so filled", and substituted reference to par. (42) for par. (40) of section 80a–2(a) of this title.

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1975 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective on expiration of one year after Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30(1) of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–32. Filing of documents with Commission in civil actions

Every registered investment company which is a party and every affiliated person of such company who is a party defendant to any action or claim by a registered investment company or a security holder thereof in a derivative or representative capacity against an officer, director, investment adviser, trustee, or depositor of such company, shall file with the Commission, unless already so filed, (1) a copy of all pleadings, verdicts, or judgments filed with the court or served in connection with such action or claim, (2) a copy of any proposed settlement, compromise, or discontinuance of such action, and (3) a copy of such motions, transcripts, or other documents filed in or issued by the court or served in connection with such action or claim as may be requested in writing by the Commission. If any document referred to in clause (1) or (2)—

(A) is delivered to such company or party defendant, such document shall be filed with the Commission not later than ten days after the receipt thereof; or

(B) is filed in such court or delivered by such company or party defendant, such documents shall be filed with the Commission not later than five days after such filing or delivery.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §33, 54 Stat. 839; Pub. L. 91–547, §19, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1428.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1970—Pub. L. 91–547 inserted provision for party acting in representative capacity and substituted provisions for prompt filing with the Commission of copies of all pleadings, verdicts, judgments, settlements, compromises, or discontinuances served or filed in suits by a registered investment company or a security holder thereof against an officer, director, investment adviser, trustee, or depositor of such company and of copies of motions, transcripts, or other documents if the Commission requests them for prior requirement that registered companies and their affiliated persons who are defendants in derivative suits involving an alleged breach of official duty transmit to the Commission copies of the pleadings and the record in such actions after a settlement or compromise of the action has been approved by a court of competent jurisdiction or a verdict or final judgment on the merits has been rendered, Commission use of information, and nondisclosure of identity of persons.

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–33. Destruction and falsification of reports and records

(a) Willful destruction

It shall be unlawful for any person, except as permitted by rule, regulation, or order of the Commission, willfully to destroy, mutilate, or alter any account, book, or other document the preservation of which has been required pursuant to section 80a–30(a) or 80a–31(c) of this title.

(b) Untrue statements or omissions

It shall be unlawful for any person to make any untrue statement of a material fact in any registration statement, application, report, account, record, or other document filed or transmitted pursuant to this subchapter or the keeping of which is required pursuant to section 80a–30 (a) of this title. It shall be unlawful for any person so filing, transmitting, or keeping any such document to omit to state therein any fact necessary in order to prevent the statements made therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, from being materially misleading. For the purposes of this subsection, any part of any such document which is signed or certified by an accountant or auditor in

his capacity as such shall be deemed to be made, filed, transmitted, or kept by such accountant or auditor, as well as by the person filing, transmitting, or keeping the complete document.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §34, 54 Stat. 840.)

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–34. Unlawful representations and names

(a) Misrepresentation of guarantees

(1) In general

It shall be unlawful for any person, issuing or selling any security of which a registered investment company is the issuer, to represent or imply in any manner whatsoever that such security or company—

(A) has been guaranteed, sponsored, recommended, or approved by the United States, or any agency, instrumentality or officer of the United States;

(B) has been insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation; or

(C) is guaranteed by or is otherwise an obligation of any bank or insured depository institution.

(2) Disclosures

Any person issuing or selling the securities of a registered investment company that is advised by, or sold through, a bank shall prominently disclose that an investment in the company is not insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or any other government agency. The Commission may, after consultation with and taking into consideration the views of the Federal banking agencies (as defined in section 1813 of title 12), adopt rules and regulations, and issue orders, consistent with the protection of investors, prescribing the manner in which the disclosure under this paragraph shall be provided.

(3) Definitions

The terms "insured depository institution" and "appropriate Federal banking agency" have the same meanings as given in section 1813 of title 12.

(b) Unlawful representation of sponsorship by United States or agency thereof

It shall be unlawful for any person registered under any section of this subchapter, to represent or imply in any manner whatsoever that such person has been sponsored, recommended, or approved, or that his abilities or qualifications have in any respect been passed upon by the United States or any agency or officer thereof.

(c) Statement of registration under securities provisions

No provision of subsection (a) or (b) shall be construed to prohibit a statement that a person or security is registered under this chapter, the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], if such statement is true in fact and if the effect of such registration is not misrepresented.

(d) Deceptive or misleading names

It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company to adopt as a part of the name or title of such company, or of any securities of which it is the issuer, any word or words that the Commission finds are materially deceptive or misleading. The Commission is authorized, by rule, regulation, or order, to define such names or titles as are materially deceptive or misleading.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §35, 54 Stat. 840; Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §208, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3432; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §214, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1398.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (c), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (c), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified principally to chapter 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

Amendments

1999—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–102 inserted heading and amended text of subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "It shall be unlawful for any person, in issuing or selling any security of which a registered investment company is the issuer, to represent or imply in any manner whatsoever that such security or company has been guaranteed, sponsored, recommended, or approved by the United States or any agency or officer thereof."

1996—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 104–290 inserted heading and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "It shall be unlawful for any registered investment company hereafter to adopt as a part of the name or title of such company, or of any security of which it is the issuer, any word or words which the Commission finds and by order declares to be deceptive or misleading. The Commission is authorized to bring an action in the proper district court of the United States or United States court of any Territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States alleging that the name or title of any registered investment company, or of any security which it has issued, is materially deceptive or misleading. If the court finds that the Commission's allegations in this respect, taking into consideration the history of the investment company and the length of time which it may have used any such name or title, are established, the court shall enjoin such investment company from continuing to use any such name or title."

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1999 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 106–102 effective 18 months after Nov. 12, 1999, see section 225 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–35. Breach of fiduciary duty

(a) Civil actions by Commission; jurisdiction; allegations; injunctive or other relief

The Commission is authorized to bring an action in the proper district court of the United States, or in the United States court of any territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, alleging that a person who is, or at the time of the alleged misconduct was, serving or acting in one or more of the following capacities has engaged within five years of the commencement of the action or is about to engage in any act or practice constituting a breach of fiduciary duty involving personal misconduct in respect of any registered investment company for which such person so serves or acts, or at the time of the alleged misconduct, so served or acted—

(1) as officer, director, member of any advisory board, investment adviser, or depositor; or

(2) as principal underwriter, if such registered company is an open-end company, unit investment trust, or face-amount certificate company.

If such allegations are established, the court may enjoin such persons from acting in any or all such capacities either permanently or temporarily and award such injunctive or other relief against such person as may be reasonable and appropriate in the circumstances, having due regard to the protection of investors and to the effectuation of the policies declared in section 80a–1(b) of this title.

(b) Compensation or payments as basis of fiduciary duty; civil actions by Commission or security holder; burden of proof; judicial consideration of director or shareholder approval; persons liable; extent of liability; exempted transactions; jurisdiction; finding restriction

For the purposes of this subsection, the investment adviser of a registered investment company shall be deemed to have a fiduciary duty with respect to the receipt of compensation for services, or of payments of a material nature, paid by such registered investment company or by the security holders thereof, to such investment adviser or any affiliated person of such investment adviser. An action may be brought under this subsection by the Commission, or by a security holder of such registered investment company on behalf of such company, against such investment adviser, or any affiliated person of such investment adviser, or any other person enumerated in subsection (a) of this section who has a fiduciary duty concerning such compensation or payments, for breach of fiduciary duty in respect of such

compensation or payments paid by such registered investment company or by the security holders thereof to such investment adviser or person. With respect to any such action the following provisions shall apply:

(1) It shall not be necessary to allege or prove that any defendant engaged in personal misconduct, and the plaintiff shall have the burden of proving a breach of fiduciary duty.

(2) In any such action approval by the board of directors of such investment company of such compensation or payments, or of contracts or other arrangements providing for such compensation or payments, and ratification or approval of such compensation or payments, or of contracts or other arrangements providing for such compensation or payments, by the shareholders of such investment company, shall be given such consideration by the court as is deemed appropriate under all the circumstances.

(3) No such action shall be brought or maintained against any person other than the recipient of such compensation or payments, and no damages or other relief shall be granted against any person other than the recipient of such compensation or payments. No award of damages shall be recoverable for any period prior to one year before the action was instituted. Any award of damages against such recipient shall be limited to the actual damages resulting from the breach of fiduciary duty and shall in no event exceed the amount of compensation or payment received from such investment company, or the security holders thereof, by such recipient.

(4) This subsection shall not apply to compensation or payments made in connection with transactions subject to section 80a–17 of this title, or rules, regulations, or orders thereunder, or to sales loads for the acquisition of any security issued by a registered investment company.

(5) Any action pursuant to this subsection may be brought only in an appropriate district court of the United States.

(6) No finding by a court with respect to a breach of fiduciary duty under this subsection shall be made a basis (A) for a finding of a violation of this subchapter for the purposes of sections 80a–9 and 80a–48 of this title, section 78o of this title, or section 80b–3 of this title, or (B) for an injunction to prohibit any person from serving in any of the capacities enumerated in subsection (a) of this section.

(c) Corporate or other trustees performing functions of investment advisers

For the purposes of subsections (a) and (b) of this section, the term "investment adviser" includes a corporate or other trustee performing the functions of an investment adviser.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §36, 54 Stat. 841; Pub. L. 91–547, §20, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1428; Pub. L. 94–29, §28(7), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 166; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §622, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1262; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §929F(f), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1854.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–203, in introductory provisions, substituted "a person who is, or at the time of the alleged misconduct was, serving or acting" for "a person serving or acting" and "for which such person so serves or acts, or at the time of the alleged misconduct, so served or acted" for "for which such person so serves or acts".

1987—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 100–181, §622(1), substituted "loads" for "loans".

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 100–181, §622(2), (3), redesignated as subsec. (c) provisions which were added and designated as subsec. (d) by Pub. L. 94–29, and substituted "subsections (a) and (b)" for "subsections (a) through (c)".

1975—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsec. (d).

1970—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 91–547 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and substituted in first sentence "has engaged within five years of the commencement of the action or is about to engage in any act or practice constituting a breach of fiduciary duty involving personal misconduct" for "has been guilty, after August 22, 1940, and within five years of the commencement of the action, of gross misconduct or gross abuse of trust" and second sentence reading "If such allegations are established, the court may enjoin such persons from acting in any or all such capacities either permanently or temporarily and award such injunctive or other relief against such person as may be reasonable and appropriate in the circumstances, having due regard to the protection of investors and to the effectuation of the policies declared in section 80a–1(b) of this title" for prior provision reading "If the Commission's allegations of such gross misconduct or gross abuse of trust are established, the court shall enjoin such person from acting in such capacity or capacities either permanently or for such period of time as it in its discretion shall deem appropriate."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 91–547 added subsec. (b).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Effective Date of 1975 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, except that subsec. (b) of this section effective on expiration of eighteen months after Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 (introductory text and par. (4)) of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–36. Larceny and embezzlement

Whoever steals, unlawfully abstracts, unlawfully and willfully converts to his own use or to the use of another, or embezzles any of the moneys, funds, securities, credits, property, or assets of any registered investment company shall be deemed guilty of a crime, and upon conviction thereof shall be subject to the penalties provided in section 80a–48 of this title. A judgment of conviction or acquittal on the merits under the laws of any State shall be a bar to any prosecution under this section for the same act or acts.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §37, 54 Stat. 841.)

§80a–37. Rules, regulations, and orders

(a) Powers of Commission

The Commission shall have authority from time to time to make, issue, amend, and rescind such rules and regulations and such orders as are necessary or appropriate to the exercise of the powers conferred upon the Commission elsewhere in this subchapter, including rules and regulations defining accounting, technical, and trade terms used in this subchapter, and prescribing the form or forms in which information required in registration statements, applications, and reports to the Commission shall be set forth. For the purposes of its rules or regulations the Commission may classify persons, securities, and other matters within its jurisdiction and prescribe different requirements for different classes of persons, securities, or matters.

(b) Filing of information and documents

The Commission, by such rules and regulations or order as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may authorize the filing of any information or documents required to be filed with the Commission under this subchapter, subchapter II of this chapter, the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], or the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 [15 U.S.C. 77aaa et seq.], by incorporating by reference any information or documents theretofore or concurrently filed with the Commission under this subchapter or any of such Acts.

(c) Good faith conformance with rules, regulations, and orders

No provision of this subchapter imposing any liability shall apply to any act done or omitted in good faith in conformity with any rule, regulation, or order of the Commission, notwithstanding that such rule, regulation, or order may, after such act or omission, by amended or rescinded or be determined by judicial or other authority to be invalid for any reason.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §38, 54 Stat. 841; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §986(c)(3), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1936.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (b), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (b), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified principally to chapter 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

The Trust Indenture Act of 1939, referred to in subsec. (b), is title III of act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, as added Aug. 3, 1939, ch. 411, 53 Stat. 1149, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§77aaa et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77aaa of this title and Tables.

Amendments

2010—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–203 struck out "the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935," after "the Securities Exchange Act of 1934,".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–38. Procedure for issuance of rules and regulations

Subject to the provisions of chapter 15 of title 44 and regulations prescribed under the authority thereof, the rules and regulations of the Commission under this subchapter, and amendments thereof, shall be effective upon publication in the manner which the Commission shall prescribe, or upon such later date as may be provided in such rules and regulations.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §39, 54 Stat. 842.)

Editorial Notes

Codification

"Chapter 15 of title 44" substituted in text for "the Federal Register Act" on authority of Pub. L. 90–620, §2(b), Oct. 22, 1968, 82 Stat. 1305, the first section of which enacted Title 44, Public Printing and Documents.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–39. Procedure for issuance of orders

(a) Notice and hearing

Orders of the Commission under this subchapter shall be issued only after appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing. Notice to the parties to a proceeding before the Commission shall be given by personal service upon each party or by registered mail or certified mail or confirmed telegraphic notice to the party's last known business address. Notice to interested persons, if any, other than parties may be given in the same manner or by publication in the Federal Register.

(b) Application verified under oath admissible as evidence

The Commission may provide, by appropriate rules or regulations, that an application verified under oath may be admissible in evidence in a proceeding before the Commission and that the record in such a proceeding may consist, in whole or in part, of such application.

(c) Parties

In any proceeding before the Commission, the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as it may prescribe, shall admit as a party any interested State or State agency, and may admit as a party any representative of interested security holders, or any other person whose participation in the proceeding may be in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §40, 54 Stat. 842; Pub. L. 86–507, §1(15), June 11, 1960, 74 Stat. 201.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1960—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 86–507 inserted "or certified mail" after "registered mail".

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–40. Hearings by Commission

Hearings may be public and may be held before the Commission, any member or members thereof, or any officer or officers of the Commission designated by it, and appropriate records thereof shall be kept.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §41, 54 Stat. 842.)

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–41. Enforcement of subchapter

(a) Investigation

The Commission may make such investigations as it deems necessary to determine whether any person has violated or is about to violate any provision of this subchapter or of any rule, regulation, or order hereunder, or to determine whether any action in any court or any proceeding before the Commission shall be instituted under this subchapter against a particular person or persons, or with respect to a particular transaction or transactions. The Commission shall permit any person to file with it a statement in writing, under oath or otherwise as the Commission shall determine, as to all the facts and circumstances concerning the matter to be investigated.

(b) Administration of oaths and affirmations, subpena of witnesses, etc.

For the purpose of any investigation or any other proceeding under this subchapter, any member of the Commission, or any officer thereof designated by it, is empowered to administer oaths and affirmations, subpena witnesses, compel their attendance, take evidence, and require the production of any books, papers, correspondence, memoranda, contracts, agreements, or other records which are relevant or material to the inquiry. Such attendance of witnesses and

the production of any such records may be required from any place in any State or in any Territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States at any designated place of hearing.

(c) Jurisdiction of courts of United States

In case of contumacy by, or refusal to obey a subpena issued to, any person, the Commission may invoke the aid of any court of the United States within the jurisdiction of which such investigation or proceeding is carried on, or where such person resides or carries on business, in requiring the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of books, papers, correspondence, memoranda, contracts, agreements, and other records. And such court may issue an order requiring such person to appear before the Commission or member or officer designated by the Commission, there to produce records, if so ordered, or to give testimony touching the matter under investigation or in question; any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by such court as a contempt thereof. All process in any such case may be served in the judicial district whereof such person is an inhabitant or wherever he may be found. Any person who without just cause shall fail or refuse to attend and testify or to answer any lawful inquiry or to produce books, papers, correspondence, memoranda, contracts, agreements, or other records, if in his or its power so to do, in obedience to the subpena of the Commission, shall be guilty of a misdemeanor, and upon conviction shall be subject to a fine of not more than $1,000 or to imprisonment for a term of not more than one year, or both.

(d) Action for injunction

Whenever it shall appear to the Commission that any person has engaged or is about to engage in any act or practice constituting a violation of any provision of this subchapter, or of any rule, regulation, or order hereunder, it may in its discretion bring an action in the proper district court of the United States, or the proper United States court of any Territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, to enjoin such acts or practices and to enforce compliance with this subchapter or any rule, regulation, or order hereunder. Upon a showing that such person has engaged or is about to engage in any such act or practice, a permanent or temporary injunction or decree or restraining order shall be granted without bond. In any proceeding under this subsection to enforce compliance with section 80a–7 of this title, the court as a court of equity may, to the extent it deems necessary or appropriate, take exclusive jurisdiction and possession of the investment company or companies involved and the books, records, and assets thereof, wherever located; and the court shall have jurisdiction to appoint a trustee, who with the approval of the court shall have power to dispose of any or all of such assets, subject to such terms and conditions as the court may prescribe. The Commission may transmit such evidence as may be available concerning any violation of the provisions of this subchapter or of any rule, regulation, or order thereunder, to the Attorney General, who, in his discretion, may institute the appropriate criminal proceedings under this subchapter.

(e) Money penalties in civil actions

(1) Authority of Commission

Whenever it shall appear to the Commission that any person has violated any provision of this subchapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or a cease-and-desist order entered by the Commission pursuant to section 80a–9(f) of this title, the Commission may bring an action in a United States district court to seek, and the court shall have jurisdiction to impose, upon a proper showing, a civil penalty to be paid by the person who committed such violation.

(2) Amount of penalty

(A) First tier

The amount of the penalty shall be determined by the court in light of the facts and circumstances. For each violation, the amount of the penalty shall not exceed the greater of (i) $5,000 for a natural person or $50,000 for any other person, or (ii) the gross amount of pecuniary gain to such defendant as a result of the violation.

(B) Second tier

Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), the amount of penalty for each such violation shall not exceed the greater of (i) $50,000 for a natural person or $250,000 for any other person, or (ii) the gross amount of pecuniary gain to such defendant as a result of the violation, if the violation described in paragraph (1) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement.

(C) Third tier

Notwithstanding subparagraphs (A) and (B), the amount of penalty for each such violation shall not exceed the greater of (i) $100,000 for a natural person or $500,000 for any other person, or (ii) the gross amount of pecuniary gain to such defendant as a result of the violation, if—

(I) the violation described in paragraph (1) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement; and

(II) such violation directly or indirectly resulted in substantial losses or created a significant risk of substantial losses to other persons.

(3) Procedures for collection

(A) Payment of penalty to Treasury

A penalty imposed under this section shall be payable into the Treasury of the United States, except as otherwise provided in section 7246 of this title and section 78u–6 of this title.

(B) Collection of penalties

If a person upon whom such a penalty is imposed shall fail to pay such penalty within the time prescribed in the court's order, the Commission may refer the matter to the Attorney General who shall recover such penalty by action in the appropriate United States district court.

(C) Remedy not exclusive

The actions authorized by this subsection may be brought in addition to any other action that the Commission or the Attorney General is entitled to bring.

(D) Jurisdiction and venue

For purposes of section 80a–43 of this title, actions under this paragraph shall be actions to enforce a liability or a duty created by this subchapter.

(4) Special provisions relating to a violation of a cease-and-desist order

In an action to enforce a cease-and-desist order entered by the Commission pursuant to section 80a–9(f) of this title, each separate violation of such order shall be a separate offense, except that in the case of a violation through a continuing failure to comply with the order, each day of the failure to comply shall be deemed a separate offense.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §42, 54 Stat. 842; Pub. L. 91–452, title II, §215, Oct. 15, 1970, 84 Stat. 929; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §623, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1262; Pub. L. 101–429, title III, §302, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 945; Pub. L. 107–204, title III, §308(d)(4), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 785; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §923(a)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1849.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

2010—Subsec. (e)(3)(A). Pub. L. 111–203 inserted "and section 78u–6 of this title" after "section 7246 of this title".

2002—Subsec. (e)(3)(A). Pub. L. 107–204 inserted ", except as otherwise provided in section 7246 of this title" before period at end.

1990—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 101–429 added subsec. (e).

1987—Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 100–181 redesignated subsec. (e) as (d).

1970—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 91–452 struck out subsec. (d) which related to immunity from prosecution of any individual compelled to testify or produce evidence, documentary or otherwise, after claiming his privilege against self-incrimination.

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Effective Date of 1990 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–452 effective on sixtieth day following Oct. 15, 1970, see section 260 of Pub. L. 91–452, set out as an Effective Date; Savings Provision note under section 6001 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Savings Provision

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–452 not to affect any immunity to which any individual is entitled under this section by reason of any testimony given before the sixtieth day following Oct. 15, 1970, see section 260 of Pub. L. 91–452, set out as an Effective Date; Savings Provision note under section 6001 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–42. Court review of orders

(a) Any person or party aggrieved by an order issued by the Commission under this subchapter may obtain a review of such order in the United States court of appeals within any circuit wherein such person resides or has his principal place of business, or in the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia, by filing in such court, within sixty days after the entry of such order, a written petition praying that the order of the Commission be modified or set aside in whole or in part. A copy of such petition shall be forthwith transmitted by the clerk of the court to any member of the Commission or any officer thereof designated by the Commission for that purpose, and thereupon the Commission shall file in the court the record upon which the order complained of was entered, as provided in section 2112 of title 28. Upon the filing of such petition such court shall have jurisdiction, which upon the filing of the record shall be exclusive, to affirm, modify, or set aside such order, in whole or in part. No objection to the order of the Commission shall be considered by the court unless such objection shall have been urged before the Commission or unless there were reasonable grounds for failure so to do. The findings of the Commission as to the facts, if supported by substantial evidence, shall be conclusive. If application is made to the court for leave to adduce additional evidence, and it is shown to the satisfaction of the court that such additional evidence is material and that there were reasonable grounds for failure to adduce such evidence in the proceeding before the Commission, the court may order such additional evidence to be taken before the Commission and to be adduced upon the hearing in such manner and upon such terms and conditions as to the court may seem proper. The Commission may modify its findings as to the facts by reason of the additional evidence so taken, and it shall file with the court such modified or new findings, which, if supported by substantial evidence, shall be conclusive, and its recommendation, if any, for the modification or setting aside of the original order. The judgment and decree of the court affirming, modifying, or setting aside, in whole or in part, any such order of the Commission shall be final, subject to review by the Supreme Court of the United States upon certiorari or certification as provided in section 1254 of title 28.

(b) The commencement of proceedings under subsection (a) to review an order of the Commission issued under section 80a–8(e) of this title shall operate as a stay of the Commission's order unless the court otherwise orders. The commencement of proceedings under subsection (a) to review an order of the Commission issued under any provision of this subchapter other than section 80a–8(e) of this title shall not operate as a stay of the Commission's order unless the court specifically so orders.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §43, 54 Stat. 844; June 25, 1948, ch. 646, §32(a), 62 Stat. 991; May 24, 1949, ch. 139, §127, 63 Stat. 107; Pub. L. 85–791, §25, Aug. 28, 1958, 72 Stat. 949; Pub. L. 91–547, §21, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1430.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1970—Pub. L. 91–547 substituted reference to "section 1254" for "sections 346 and 347" of title 28.

1958—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 85–791, in second sentence, substituted "transmitted by the clerk of the court to any member of the Commission or" for "served upon any member of the Commission or upon", substituted "file in the court" for "certify and file in the court a transcript of", and inserted "as provided in section 2112 of title 28" and, in third sentence, substituted "petition" for "transcript", and "jurisdiction, which upon the filing of the record shall be exclusive" for "exclusive jurisdiction".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Change of Name

Act June 25, 1948, eff. Sept. 1, 1948, as amended by act May 24, 1949, substituted "court of appeals" for "circuit court of appeals".

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–43. Jurisdiction of offenses and suits

The district courts of the United States and the United States courts of any Territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States shall have jurisdiction of violations of this subchapter or the rules, regulations, or orders thereunder, and, concurrently with State and Territorial courts, of all suits in equity and actions at law brought to enforce any liability or duty created by, or to enjoin any violation of, this subchapter or the rules, regulations, or orders thereunder. Any criminal proceeding may be brought in the district wherein any act or transaction constituting the violation occurred. A criminal proceeding based upon a violation of section 80a–33 of this title, or upon a failure to file a report or other document required to be filed under this subchapter, may be brought in the district wherein the defendant is an inhabitant or maintains his principal office or place of business. Any suit or action to enforce any liability or duty created by, or to enjoin any violation of, this subchapter or rules, regulations, or orders thereunder, may be brought in any such district or in the district wherein the defendant is an inhabitant or transacts business, and process in such cases may be served in any district of which the defendant is an inhabitant or transacts business or wherever the defendant may be found. In any action or proceeding instituted by the Commission under this subchapter in a United States district court for any judicial district, a subpoena issued to compel the attendance of a witness or the production of documents or tangible things (or both) at a hearing or trial may be served at any place within the United States. Rule 45(c)(3)(A)(ii) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall not apply to a subpoena issued under the preceding sentence. Judgments and decrees so rendered shall be subject to review as provided in sections 1254, 1291, 1292, and 1294 of title 28. No costs shall be assessed for or against the Commission in any proceeding under this subchapter brought by or against the Commission in any court. The Commission may intervene as a party in any action or suit to enforce any liability or duty created by, or to enjoin any noncompliance with, section 80a–35(b) of this title at any stage of such action or suit prior to final judgment therein.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §44, 54 Stat. 844; Pub. L. 91–547, §22, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1430; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §929E(c), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1853.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, referred to in text, are set out in the Appendix to Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

Amendments

2010—Pub. L. 111–203 inserted "In any action or proceeding instituted by the Commission under this subchapter in a United States district court for any judicial district, a subpoena issued to compel the attendance of a witness or the production of documents or tangible things (or both) at a hearing or trial may be served at any place within the United States. Rule 45(c)(3)(A)(ii) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall not apply to a subpoena issued under the preceding sentence." after "defendant may be found."

1970—Pub. L. 91–547 substituted reference to "sections 1254, 1291, 1292, and 1294 of title 28" for "sections 225 and 347 of title 28 and section 7, as amended, of the Act entitled 'An Act to establish a court of appeals for the District of Columbia, approved February 9, 1893' " and provided for Commission intervention as a party in any action or suit to enforce any liability or duty created by, or to enjoin any noncompliance with, section 80a–35(b) of this title at any stage of such action or suit prior to final judgment therein, respectively.

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–44. Disclosure of information filed with Commission; copies

(a) The information contained in any registration statement, application, report, or other document filed with the Commission pursuant to any provision of this subchapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder (as distinguished from any information or document transmitted to the Commission) shall be made available to the public, unless and except insofar as the Commission, by rules and regulations upon its own motion, or by order upon application, finds that public disclosure is neither necessary nor appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Except as provided in section 78x(c) of this title, it shall be unlawful for any member, officer, or employee of the Commission to use for personal benefit, or to disclose to any person other than an official or employee of the United States or of a State, for official use, or for any such official or employee to use for personal benefit, any information contained in any document so filed or transmitted, if such information is not available to the public.

(b) Photostatic or other copies of information contained in documents filed with the Commission under this subchapter and made available to the public shall be furnished any person at such reasonable charge and under such reasonable limitations as the Commission shall prescribe.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §45, 54 Stat. 845; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, §202(b)(1), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2715.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101–550 substituted "Except as provided in section 78x(c) of this title, it shall be unlawful" for "It shall be unlawful".

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–45. Reports by Commission; hiring and leasing authority

(a) Omitted

(b) Hiring and leasing authority

The provisions of section 78d(b) of this title shall be applicable with respect to the power of the Commission—

(1) to appoint and fix the compensation of such employees as may be necessary for carrying out its functions under this subchapter, and

(2) to lease and allocate such real property as may be necessary for carrying out its functions under this subchapter.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §46, 54 Stat. 845; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title XI, §1106(a), 63 Stat. 972; Pub. L. 101–550, title I, §104(c), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2714.)

Editorial Notes

Codification

Subsection (a), which required the Securities and Exchange Commission to submit an annual report to Congress on the work of the Commission, terminated, effective May 15, 2000, pursuant to section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance. See, also, page 191 of House Document No. 103–7.

Amendments

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–550 amended subsec. (b) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (b) related to appointment and compensation of employees.

1949—Subsec. (b). Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted "Classification Act of 1949" for "Classification Act of 1923".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Repeals

Act Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, set out in the credit of this section, was repealed (subject to a savings clause) by Pub. L. 89–554, Sept. 6, 1966, §8, 80 Stat. 632, 655.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–46. Validity of contracts

(a) Waiver of compliance as void

Any condition, stipulation, or provision binding any person to waive compliance with any provision of this subchapter or with any rule, regulation, or order thereunder shall be void.

(b) Equitable results; rescission; severance

(1) A contract that is made, or whose performance involves, a violation of this subchapter, or of any rule, regulation, or order thereunder, is unenforceable by either party (or by a nonparty to the contract who acquired a right under the contract with knowledge of the facts by reason of which the making or performance violated or would violate any provision of this subchapter or of any rule, regulation, or order thereunder) unless a court finds that under the circumstances enforcement would produce a more equitable result than nonenforcement and would not be inconsistent with the purposes of this subchapter.

(2) To the extent that a contract described in paragraph (1) has been performed, a court may not deny rescission at the instance of any party unless such court finds that under the circumstances the denial of rescission would produce a more equitable result than its grant and would not be inconsistent with the purposes of this subchapter.

(3) This subsection shall not apply (A) to the lawful portion of a contract to the extent that it may be severed from the unlawful portion of the contract, or (B) to preclude recovery against any person for unjust enrichment.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §47, 54 Stat. 845; Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §104, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2277.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1980—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96–477 provided that a contract whose terms violated this subchapter or any rule, regulation, or order thereunder would be unenforceable by either party or by a nonparty to the contract who acquired a right under such contract with knowledge of the facts by reason of which the making or performance of the contract would violate this subchapter, struck out provisions declaring such contracts void as regards the rights of the violators or nonparties to the contract with actual knowledge of its illegality, authorized the court to enforce such contracts where the court found that under the circumstances enforcement would produce a more equitable result than nonenforcement and such enforcement would not be inconsistent with the purposes of this subchapter, authorized the same two-part test to save from rescission any portions of such contracts which had been performed, and provided that subsec. (b) was not to apply to a lawful portion of a contract to the extent it could be severed from an unlawful portion of such contract, or to preclude recovery against any person for unjust enrichment.

§80a–47. Liability of controlling persons; preventing compliance with subchapter

(a) Procurement

It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, to cause to be done any act or thing through or by means of any other person which it would be unlawful for such person to do under the provisions of this subchapter or any rule, regulation, or order thereunder.

(b) Substantially assisting a violation

For purposes of any action brought by the Commission under subsection (d) or (e) of section 80a–41 of this title, any person that knowingly or recklessly provides substantial assistance to another person in violation of a provision of this subchapter, or of any rule or regulation issued under this subchapter, shall be deemed to be in violation of such provision to the same extent as the person to whom such assistance is provided.

(c) Obstructing compliance

It shall be unlawful for any person without just cause to hinder, delay, or obstruct the making, filing, or keeping of any information, document, report, record, or account required to be made, filed, or kept under any provision of this subchapter or any rule, regulation, or order thereunder.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §48, 54 Stat. 846; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §929M(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1861.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

2010—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 111–203 added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

§80a–48. Penalties

Any person who willfully violates any provision of this subchapter or of any rule, regulation, or order hereunder, or any person who willfully in any registration statement, application, report, account, record, or other document filed or transmitted pursuant to this subchapter or the keeping of which is required pursuant to section 80a–30(a) of this title makes any untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state any material fact necessary in order to prevent the statements made therein from being materially misleading in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, shall upon conviction be fined not more than $10,000 or imprisoned not more than five years, or both; but no person shall be convicted under this section for the violation of any rule, regulation, or order if he proves that he had no actual knowledge of such rule, regulation, or order.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §49, 54 Stat. 846; Pub. L. 94–29, §27(e), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 163.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1975—Pub. L. 94–29 substituted "or imprisoned not more than five years" for "or imprisoned not more than two years".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1975 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

§80a–49. Construction with other laws

Except where specific provision is made to the contrary, nothing in this subchapter shall affect (1) the jurisdiction of the Commission under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 [15 U.S.C. 77aaa et seq.], or subchapter II of this chapter, over any person, security, or transaction, or (2) the rights, obligations, duties, or liabilities of any person under such Acts; nor shall anything in this subchapter affect the jurisdiction of any other commission, board, agency, or officer of the United States or of any State or political subdivision of any State, over any person, security, or transaction, insofar as such jurisdiction does not conflict with any provision of this subchapter or of any rule, regulation, or order hereunder.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §50, 54 Stat. 846; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §986(c)(4), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1936.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in text, is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in text, is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified principally to chapter 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

The Trust Indenture Act of 1939, referred to in text, is title III of act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, as added Aug. 3, 1939, ch. 411, 53 Stat. 1149, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§77aaa et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77aaa of this title and Tables.

Amendments

2010—Pub. L. 111–203 struck out "the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935," after "the Securities Exchange Act of 1934,".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Executive Documents

Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§80a–50. Separability

If any provision of this subchapter or any provision incorporated in this subchapter by reference, or the application of any such provision to any person or circumstances, shall be held invalid, the remainder of this subchapter and the application of any such provision to person or circumstances other than those as to which it is held invalid shall not be affected thereby.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §51, 54 Stat. 846.)

§80a–51. Short title

This subchapter may be cited as the "Investment Company Act of 1940".

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §52, 54 Stat. 847.)

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Short Title of 2018 Amendment

Pub. L. 115–141, div. S, title VIII, §801, Mar. 23, 2018, 132 Stat. 1138, provided that: "This title [amending sections 80a–56, 80a–60, 80a–62, and 80b–5 of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under under section 80a–53 of this title] may be cited as the 'Small Business Credit Availability Act'."

Short Title of 1996 Amendment

Pub. L. 104–290, title II, §201, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3426, provided that: "This title [amending sections 80a–2, 80a–3, 80a–12, 80a–24, 80a–26, 80a–27, 80a–29, 80a–30, 80a–34, and 80b–5 of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 80a–2, 80a–3, and 80a–24 of this title] may be cited as the 'Investment Company Act Amendments of 1996'."

Short Title of 1995 Amendment

Pub. L. 104–62, §1(a), Dec. 8, 1995, 109 Stat. 682, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 80a–3a of this title, amending sections 77c, 78c, 78l, 80a–3, 80a–7, and 80b–3 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 77c of this title] may be cited as the 'Philanthropy Protection Act of 1995'."

Short Title of 1980 Amendment

Pub. L. 96–477, §1, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2275, provided that: "That this Act [enacting sections 80a–53 to 80a–64 and 80c to 80c–3 of this title, amending sections 77b, 77c, 77d, 77s, 77ddd, 78c, 78kk, 80a–2, 80a–3, 80a–6, 80a–46, 80b–2, 80b–3, and 80b–5 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 77a and 80c of this title] may be cited as the 'Small Business Investment Incentive Act of 1980'."

Short Title of 1970 Amendment

Pub. L. 91–547, §1, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1413, provided: "That this Act [enacting section 80b–6a of this title, amending sections 77b, 77c, 78c, 78l, 80a–2, 80a–3, 80a–8 to 80a–13, 80a–15, 80a–17 to 80a–19, 80a–22, 80a–24 to 80a–28, 80a–31, 80a–32, 80a–35, 80a–42, 80a–43, 80b–2, 80b–3, and 80b–5 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 77c and 80a–2 of this title] may be cited as the 'Investment Company amendments Act of 1970'."

§80a–52. Effective date

The effective date of the provisions of this subchapter, so far as the same relate to face-amount certificates or to face-amount certificate companies, is January 1, 1941. The effective date of provisions hereof, insofar as the same do not apply to face-amount certificates or face-amount certificate companies is November 1, 1940. Except as herein otherwise provided, every provision of this subchapter shall take effect on November 1, 1940.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §53, 54 Stat. 847; Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §624, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1262.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1987—Pub. L. 100–181 struck out at end of first sentence ": *Provided, however*, That any such face-amount certificate company may register prior to said date, as provided by section 80a–8 of this title, and such registration shall not operate to change or affect said effective date as to any such company or any face-amount certificates issued by it".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 1970 Amendment

Pub. L. 91–547, §30, Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1436, provided that: "This Act [see Short Title note set out under section 80a–51 of this title] shall take effect on the date of its enactment [Dec. 14, 1970], except that—

"(1) sections (5)(a), (b), and (c); 8; 9(a); 11; 18; 24(a); and 25 (amending sections 10(a), (b), and (c) [section 80a–10(a), (b), and (c)]; 15 [section 80a–15]; 17(f) [section 80a–17(f)]; 19 [section 80a–19]; and 32(a) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [section 80a–31(a)]; and sections 203(b) and 205 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [sections 80b–3(b) and 80b–5 of this title], respectively) shall take effect upon the expiration of one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 14, 1970];

"(2) that part of section 5(d) which substitutes 'interested persons' for 'affiliated persons' in section 10(d) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [section 80a–10(d) of this title] shall take effect upon the expiration of one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 14, 1970];

"(3) sections 16 and 17 (amending section 27 and 28 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [sections 80a–27 and 80a–28 of this title]) shall take effect upon the expiration of six months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 14, 1970]; and

"(4) that part of section 20 which adds a subsection (b) to section 36 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [section 80a–35 of this title] shall take effect upon the expiration of eighteen months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 14, 1970]."

§80a–53. Election to be regulated as business development company

(a) Eligibility

Any company defined in section 80a–2(a)(48)(A) and (B) of this title may elect to be subject to the provisions of sections 80a–54 through 80a–64 of this title by filing with the Commission a notification of election, if such company—

(1) has a class of its equity securities registered under section 78l of this title; or

(2) has filed a registration statement pursuant to section 78l of this title for a class of its equity securities.

(b) Form and manner of notification; effect

The Commission may, by rule, prescribe the form and manner in which notification of election under this section shall be given. A business development company shall be deemed to be subject to sections 80a–54 through 80a–64 of this title upon receipt by the Commission of such notification of election.

(c) Revocation or withdrawal of election

Whenever the Commission finds, on its own motion or upon application, that a business development company which has filed a notification of election pursuant to subsection (a) of this section has ceased to engage in business, the Commission shall so declare by order revoking such company's election. Any business development company may voluntarily withdraw its election under subsection (a) by filing a notice of withdrawal of election with the Commission, in a form and manner which the Commission may, by rule, prescribe. Such withdrawal shall be effective immediately upon receipt by the Commission.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §54, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2278; amended Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §625, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1262.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1987—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100–181 substituted "defined in section" for "defined in sections".

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Parity for Business Development Companies Regarding Offering and Proxy Rules

Pub. L. 115–141, div. S, title VIII, §803, Mar. 23, 2018, 132 Stat. 1140, provided that:

"(a) Definitions.—In this section—

"(1) the term 'business development company' has the meaning given the term in section 2(a) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–2(a));

"(2) the term 'Commission' means the Securities and Exchange Commission;

"(3) the term 'Form N–2' means the form described in section 239.14 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations;

"(4) the term 'Form S–3' means the form described in section 239.13 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations; and

"(5) the term 'Schedule 14A' means the information required under section 240.14a–101 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations.

"(b) Revision to Rules.—

"(1) In general.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Mar. 23, 2018], the Commission shall make the revisions described in paragraph (2) to allow a business development company that has filed an election under section 54 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–53) to use the securities offering and proxy rules that are available to other issuers that are

required to file reports under section 13(a) or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m(a); 78o(d)).

"(2) REQUIRED REVISIONS.—The revisions described in this paragraph are revisions to—

"(A) section 230.405 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations—

"(i) to remove the exclusion of a business development company from the definition of the term 'well-known seasoned issuer' under that section; and

"(ii) to add a registration statement filed on Form N–2 to the definition of the term 'automatic shelf registration statement' under that section;

"(B) sections 230.168 and 230.169 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to remove the exclusion of a business development company from an issuer that is eligible for the exemptions under those sections;

"(C) section 230.163 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to remove a business development company from the list of issuers that are ineligible for the exemption under that section;

"(D) section 230.163A of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to remove the communications made by a business development company from the list of communications that are ineligible for the exemption under that section;

"(E) section 230.134 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to remove the exclusion of a communication relating to a business development company from the application of that section;

"(F) sections 230.138 and 230.139 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to specifically include a business development company as an issuer to which those sections apply;

"(G) section 230.156 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to provide that nothing in that section may be construed to prevent a business development company from qualifying for an exemption under section 230.168 or 230.169 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, as amended by the Commission in accordance with the requirements of this section;

"(H) section 230.164 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to remove a business development company from the list of issuers that are excluded under that section;

"(I) section 230.433 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to specifically include a business development company that is a well-known seasoned issuer as an issuer to which that section applies;

"(J) section 230.415 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations to state that the registration for securities under section 230.415(a)(1)(x) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, includes securities registered on Form N–2 by a business development company that would otherwise meet the eligibility requirements of Form S–3;

"(K) section 230.497 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to include a process for a business development company to file a form of prospectus in the same manner as the process for filing a form of prospectus under section 230.424(b) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations;

"(L) sections 230.172 and 230.173 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to remove the exclusion of an offering of a business development company from the application of those sections;

"(M) section 230.418 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to provide that a business development company that would otherwise meet the eligibility requirements of Form S–3 shall be exempt from paragraph (a)(3) of that section;

"(N) Schedule 14A to revise item 13(b)(1) of that Schedule to include a business development company that would otherwise meet the requirements of note E of that Schedule as an issuer to which that item applies;

"(O) section 243.103 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to provide that paragraph (a) of that section applies for the purposes of Form N–2; and

"(P) item 34 on Form N–2 to require a business development company to provide undertakings that are no more restrictive than the undertakings that are required of a registrant under section 229.512 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations.

"(c) REVISION TO FORM N–2.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act, the Commission shall revise Form N–2—

"(1) to include an item or instruction that is similar to item 12 on Form S–3 to provide that a business development company that would otherwise meet the requirements of Form S–3 shall incorporate by reference the reports and documents filed by the business development company under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.) into the registration statement of the business development company filed on Form N–2; and

"(2) to include an item or instruction that is similar to the instruction regarding automatic shelf offerings by well-known seasoned issuers on Form S–3 to provide that a business development company that is a well-known seasoned issuer may file automatic shelf offerings on Form N–2.

"(d) TREATMENT IF REVISIONS NOT COMPLETED IN TIMELY MANNER.—If the Commission fails to complete the revisions required under subsections (b) and (c) by the dates described in those subsections, a business

development company, during the period beginning on the date that is 1 day after 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act and ending on the date that the Commission completes those revisions, may deem those revisions to have been completed in accordance with the actions required to be taken by the Commission under those subsections.

"(e) RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.—

"(1) TREATMENT OF SUCCESSOR REGULATIONS AND FORMS.—Any reference in this section to a regulation or form shall be construed as a reference to—

"(A) that regulation or form, as in effect on the day before the date of enactment of this Act; or

"(B) any successor to that regulation or form.

"(2) DISTRIBUTION OF SALES MATERIAL.—Nothing in this section, or in the amendments made pursuant to the requirements of this section, may be construed to prevent a business development company from distributing sales material under section 230.482 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations."

§80a–54. Acquisition of assets by business development companies

(a) Permissible assets; percentage

It shall be unlawful for a business development company to acquire any assets (other than those described in paragraphs (1) through (7) of this subsection) unless, at the time the acquisition is made, assets described in paragraphs (1) through (6) below represent at least 70 per centum of the value of its total assets (other than assets described in paragraph (7) below):

(1) securities purchased, in transactions not involving any public offering or in such other transactions as the Commission may, by rule, prescribe if it finds that enforcement of this subchapter and of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] with respect to such transactions is not necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors by reason of the small amount, or the limited nature of the public offering, involved in such transactions—

(A) from the issuer of such securities, which issuer is an eligible portfolio company, from any person who is, or who within the preceding thirteen months has been, an affiliated person of such eligible portfolio company, or from any other person, subject to such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors; or

(B) from the issuer of such securities, which issuer is described in section 80a–2(a)(46)(A) and (B) of this title but is not an eligible portfolio company because it has issued a class of securities with respect to which a member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer may extend or maintain credit to or for a customer pursuant to rules or regulations adopted by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System under section 78g of this title, or from any person who is an officer or employee of such issuer, if—

(i) at the time of the purchase, the business development company owns at least 50 per centum of—

(I) the greatest number of equity securities of such issuer and securities convertible into or exchangeable for such securities; and

(II) the greatest amount of debt securities of such issuer,

held by such business development company at any point in time during the period when such issuer was an eligible portfolio company, except that options, warrants, and similar securities which have by their terms expired and debt securities which have been converted, or repaid or prepaid in the ordinary course of business or incident to a public offering of securities of such issuer, shall not be considered to have been held by such business development company for purposes of this requirement; and

(ii) the business development company is one of the 20 largest holders of record of such issuer's outstanding voting securities;

(2) securities of any eligible portfolio company with respect to which the business development company satisfies the requirements of section 80a–2(a)(46)(C)(ii) of this title;

(3) securities purchased in transactions not involving any public offering from an issuer described in sections 80a–2(a)(46)(A) and (B) of this title or from a person who is, or who within the preceding thirteen months has been, an affiliated person of such issuer, or from any person in transactions incident thereto, if such securities were—

(A) issued by an issuer that is, or was immediately prior to the purchase of its securities by the business development company, in bankruptcy proceedings, subject to reorganization under the supervision of a court of competent jurisdiction, or subject to a plan or arrangement resulting from such bankruptcy proceedings or reorganization;

(B) issued by an issuer pursuant to or in consummation of such a plan or arrangement; or

(C) issued by an issuer that, immediately prior to the purchase of such issuer's securities by the business development company, was not in bankruptcy proceedings but was unable to meet its obligations as they came due without material assistance other than conventional lending or financing arrangements;

(4) securities of eligible portfolio companies purchased from any person in transactions not involving any public offering, if there is no ready market for such securities and if immediately prior to such purchase the business

development company owns at least 60 per centum of the outstanding equity securities of such issuer (giving effect to all securities presently convertible into or exchangeable for equity securities of such issuer as if such securities were so converted or exchanged);

(5) securities received in exchange for or distributed on or with respect to securities described in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this subsection, or pursuant to the exercise of options, warrants, or rights relating to securities described in such paragraphs;

(6) cash, cash items, Government securities, or high quality debt securities maturing in one year or less from the time of investment in such high quality debt securities; and

(7) office furniture and equipment, interests in real estate and leasehold improvements and facilities maintained to conduct the business operations of the business development company, deferred organization and operating expenses, and other noninvestment assets necessary and appropriate to its operations as a business development company, including notes of indebtedness of directors, officers, employees, and general partners held by a business development company as payment for securities of such company issued in connection with an executive compensation plan described in section 80a–56(j) of this title.

(b) Valuation of assets

For purposes of this section, the value of a business development company's assets shall be determined as of the date of the most recent financial statements filed by such company with the Commission pursuant to section 78m of this title, and shall be determined no less frequently than annually.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §55, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2278; amended Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §626, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1263; Pub. L. 104–290, title V, §505, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3446.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

Amendments

1996—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 104–290 substituted "from any person" for "or from any person" and inserted before semicolon ", or from any other person, subject to such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors".

1987—Subsec. (a)(1)(B). Pub. L. 100–181 substituted "described in section" for "described in sections".

§80a–55. Qualifications of directors

(a) Non-interested persons

A majority of a business development company's directors or general partners shall be persons who are not interested persons of such company.

(b) Vacancies; suspension of provisions

If, by reason of the death, disqualification, or bona fide resignation of any director or general partner, a business development company does not meet the requirements of subsection (a) of this section, or the requirements of section 80a–15(f)(1) of this title with respect to directors, the operation of such provisions shall be suspended for a period of 90 days or for such longer period as the Commission may prescribe, upon its own motion or by order upon application, as not inconsistent with the protection of investors.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §56, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2280.)

§80a–56. Transactions with certain affiliates

(a) Transactions involving controlling or closely affiliated persons

It shall be unlawful for any person who is related to a business development company in a manner described in subsection (b) of this section, acting as principal—

(1) knowingly to sell any security or other property to such business development company or to any company controlled by such business development company, unless such sale involves solely (A) securities of which the buyer is the issuer, or (B) securities of which the seller is the issuer and which are part of a general offering to the holders of a class of its securities;

(2) knowingly to purchase from such business development company or from any company controlled by such business development company, any security or other property (except securities of which the seller is the issuer);

(3) knowingly to borrow money or other property from such business development company or from any company controlled by such business development company (unless the borrower is controlled by the lender), except as permitted in section 80a–21(b) or section 80a–61 of this title; or

(4) knowingly to effect any transaction in which such business development company or a company controlled by such business development company is a joint or a joint and several participant with such person in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe for the purpose of limiting or preventing participation by such business development company or controlled company on a basis less advantageous than that of such person, except that nothing contained in this paragraph shall be deemed to preclude any person from acting as manager of any underwriting syndicate or other group in which such business development company or controlled company is a participant and receiving compensation therefor.

(b) Controlling or closely affiliated persons

The provisions of subsection (a) of this section shall apply to the following persons:

(1) Any director, officer, employee, or member of an advisory board of a business development company or any person (other than the business development company itself) who is, within the meaning of section 80a–2(a)(3)(C) of this title, an affiliated person of any such person specified in this paragraph.

(2) Any investment adviser or promoter of, general partner in, principal underwriter for, or person directly or indirectly either controlling, controlled by, or under common control with, a business development company (except the business development company itself and any person who, if it were not directly or indirectly controlled by the business development company, would not be directly or indirectly under the control of a person who controls the business development company), or any person who is, within the meaning of section 80a–2(a)(3)(C) or (D) of this title, an affiliated person of any such person specified in this paragraph.

(c) Exemption orders

Notwithstanding paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (a), any person may file with the Commission an application for an order exempting a proposed transaction of the applicant from one or more provisions of such paragraphs. The Commission shall grant such application and issue such order of exemption if evidence establishes that—

(1) the terms of the proposed transaction, including the consideration to be paid or received, are reasonable and fair and do not involve overreaching of the business development company or its shareholders or partners on the part of any person concerned;

(2) the proposed transaction is consistent with the policy of the business development company as recited in the filings made by such company with the Commission under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], its registration statement and reports filed under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], and its reports to shareholders or partners; and

(3) the proposed transaction is consistent with the general purposes of this subchapter.

(d) Transactions involving noncontrolling shareholders or affiliated persons

It shall be unlawful for any person who is related to a business development company in the manner described in subsection (e) of this section and who is not subject to the prohibitions of subsection (a) of this section, acting as principal—

(1) knowingly to sell any security or other property to such business development company or to any company controlled by such business development company, unless such sale involves solely (A) securities of which the buyer is the issuer, or (B) securities of which the seller is the issuer and which are part of a general offering to the holders of a class of its securities;

(2) knowingly to purchase from such business development company or from any company controlled by such business development company, any security or other property (except securities of which the seller is the issuer);

(3) knowingly to borrow money or other property from such business development company or from any company controlled by such business development company (unless the borrower is controlled by the lender), except as permitted in section 80a–21(b) of this title; or

(4) knowingly to effect any transaction in which such business development company or a company controlled by such business development company is a joint or a joint and several participant with such affiliated person in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe for the purpose of limiting or preventing participation by such business development company or controlled company on a basis less advantageous than that of such affiliated person, except that nothing contained in this paragraph shall be deemed to preclude any person from acting as manager of any underwriting syndicate or other group in which such business development company or controlled company is a participant and receiving compensation therefor.

(e) Noncontrolling shareholders or affiliated persons; executive officer

The provisions of subsection (d) of this section shall apply to the following persons:

(1) Any person (A) who is, within the meaning of section 80a–2(a)(3)(A) of this title, an affiliated person of a business development company, (B) who is an executive officer or a director of, or general partner in, any such affiliated person, or (C) who directly or indirectly either controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with, such affiliated person.

(2) Any person who is an affiliated person of a director, officer, employee, investment adviser, member of an advisory board or promoter of, principal underwriter for, general partner in, or an affiliated person of any person directly or indirectly either controlling or under common control with a business development company (except the business development company itself and any person who, if it were not directly or indirectly controlled by the business development company, would not be directly or indirectly under the control of a person who controls the business development company).

For purposes of this subsection, the term "executive officer" means the president, secretary, treasurer, any vice president in charge of a principal business function, and any other person who performs similar policymaking functions.

(f) Approval of proposed transactions

Notwithstanding subsection (d) of this section, a person described in subsection (e) may engage in a proposed transaction described in subsection (d) if such proposed transaction is approved by the required majority (as defined in subsection (o)) of the directors of or general partners in the business development company on the basis that—

(1) the terms thereof, including the consideration to be paid or received, are reasonable and fair to the shareholders or partners of the business development company and do not involve overreaching of such company or its shareholders or partners on the part of any person concerned;

(2) the proposed transaction is consistent with the interests of the shareholders or partners of the business development company and is consistent with the policy of such company as recited in filings made by such company with the Commission under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], its registration statement and reports filed under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], and its reports to shareholders or partners; and

(3) the directors or general partners record in their minutes and preserve in their records, for such periods as if such records were required to be maintained pursuant to section 80a–30(a) of this title, a description of such transaction, their findings, the information or materials upon which their findings were based, and the basis therefor.

(g) Transactions in the ordinary course of business

Notwithstanding subsection (a) or (d), a person may, in the ordinary course of business, sell to or purchase from any company merchandise or may enter into a lessor-lessee relationship with any person and furnish the services incident thereto.

(h) Inquiry procedures

The directors of or general partners in any business development company shall adopt, and periodically review and update as appropriate, procedures reasonably designed to ensure that reasonable inquiry is made, prior to the consummation of any transaction in which such business development company or a company controlled by such business development company proposes to participate, with respect to the possible involvement in the transaction of persons described in subsections (b) and (e) of this section.

(i) Rules and regulations of Commission

Until the adoption by the Commission of rules or regulations under subsections (a) and (d) of this section, the rules and regulations of the Commission under subsections (a) and (d) of section 80a–17 of this title applicable to registered closed-end investment companies shall be deemed to apply to transactions subject to subsections (a) and (d) of this section. Any rules or regulations adopted by the Commission to implement this section shall be no more restrictive than the rules or regulations adopted by the Commission under subsections (a) and (d) of section 80a–17 of this title that are applicable to all registered closed-end investment companies.

(j) Warrants, options, and rights to purchase voting securities; loans to facilitate executive compensation plans

Notwithstanding subsections (a) and (d) of this section, any director, officer, or employee of, or general partner in, a business development company may—

(1) acquire warrants, options, and rights to purchase voting securities of such business development company, and securities issued upon the exercise or conversion thereof, pursuant to an executive compensation plan offered by such company which meets the requirements of section 80a–60(a)(4)(B) of this title; and

(2) borrow money from such business development company for the purpose of purchasing securities issued by such company pursuant to an executive compensation plan, if each such loan—

(A) has a term of not more than ten years;

(B) becomes due within a reasonable time, not to exceed sixty days, after the termination of such person's employment or service;

(C) bears interest at no less than the prevailing rate applicable to 90-day United States Treasury bills at the time the loan is made;

(D) at all times is fully collateralized (such collateral may include any securities issued by such business development company); and

(E)(i) in the case of a loan to any officer or employee of such business development company (including any officer or employee who is also a director of such company), is approved by the required majority (as defined in subsection (o)) of the directors of or general partners in such company on the basis that the loan is in the best interests of such company and its shareholders or partners; or

(ii) in the case of a loan to any director of such business development company who is not also an officer or employee of such company, or to any general partner in such company, is approved by order of the Commission, upon application, on the basis that the terms of the loan are fair and reasonable and do not involve overreaching of such company or its shareholders or partners.

(k) Restriction on brokerage commissions

It shall be unlawful for any person described in subsection (l)—

(1) acting as agent, to accept from any source any compensation (other than a regular salary or wages from the business development company) for the purchase or sale of any property to or for such business development company or any controlled company thereof, except in the course of such person's business as an underwriter or broker; or

(2) acting as broker, in connection with the sale of securities to or by the business development company or any controlled company thereof, to receive from any source a commission, fee, or other remuneration for effecting such transaction which exceeds—

(A) the usual and customary broker's commission if the sale is effected on a securities exchange;

(B) 2 per centum of the sales price if the sale is effected in connection with a secondary distribution of such securities; or

(C) 1 per centum of the purchase or sale price of such securities if the sale is otherwise effected,

unless the Commission, by rules and regulations or order in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors, permits a larger commission.

(l) Persons subject to brokerage commission restrictions

The provisions of subsection (k) of this section shall apply to the following persons:

(1) Any affiliated person of a business development company.

(2)(A) Any person who is, within the meaning of section 80a–2(a)(3)(B), (C), or (D) of this title, an affiliated person of any director, officer, employee, or member of an advisory board of the business development company.

(B) Any person who is, within the meaning of section 80a–2(a)(3)(A), (B), (C), or (D) of this title, an affiliated person of any investment adviser of, general partner in, or person directly or indirectly either controlling, controlled by, or under common control with, the business development company.

(C) Any person who is, within the meaning of section 80a–2(a)(3)(C) of this title, an affiliated person of any person who is an affiliated person of the business development company within the meaning of section 80a–2(a)(3)(A) of this title.

(m) Receipt of fee or salary from transaction participant

For purposes of subsections (a) and (d), a person who is a director, officer, or employee of a party to a transaction and who receives his usual and ordinary fee or salary for usual and customary services as a director, officer, or employee from such party shall not be deemed to have a financial interest or to participate in the transaction solely by reason of his receipt of such fee or salary.

(n) Profit-sharing plans

(1) Notwithstanding subsection (a)(4) of this section, a business development company may establish and maintain a profit-sharing plan for its directors, officers, employees, and general partners and such directors, officers, employees, and general partners may participate in such profit-sharing plan, if—

(A)(i) in the case of a profit-sharing plan for officers and employees of the business development company (including any officer or employee who is also a director of such company), such profit-sharing plan is approved by the required majority (as defined in subsection (o)) of the directors of or general partners in such company on the basis that such plan is reasonable and fair to the shareholders or partners of such company, does not involve overreaching of such company or its shareholders or partners on the part of any person concerned, and is consistent with the interests of the shareholders or partners of such company; or

(ii) in the case of a profit-sharing plan which includes one or more directors of the business development company who are not also officers or employees of such company, or one or more general partners in such company, such profit-sharing plan is approved by order of the Commission, upon application, on the basis that such plan is reasonable and fair to the shareholders or partners of such company, does not involve overreaching of such company or its shareholders or partners on the part of any person concerned, and is consistent with the interests of the shareholders or partners of such company; and

(B) the aggregate amount of benefits which would be paid or accrued under such plan shall not exceed 20 per centum of the business development company's net income after taxes in any fiscal year.

(2) This subsection may not be used where the business development company has outstanding any stock option, warrant, or right issued as part of an executive compensation plan, including a plan pursuant to section 80a–60(a)(4)(B) of this title, or has an investment adviser registered or required to be registered under subchapter II of this chapter.

(o) Required majority for approval of proposed transactions

The term "required majority", when used with respect to the approval of a proposed transaction, plan, or arrangement, means both a majority of a business development company's directors or general partners who have no

financial interest in such transaction, plan, or arrangement and a majority of such directors or general partners who are not interested persons of such company.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §57, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2280; amended Pub. L. 100–181, title VI, §627, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1263; Pub. L. 115–141, div. S, title VIII, §802(b)(2)(A), Mar. 23, 2018, 132 Stat. 1140.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsecs. (c)(2) and (f)(2), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsecs. (c)(2) and (f)(2), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified principally to chapter 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

Amendments

2018—Subsecs. (j)(1), (n)(2). Pub. L. 115–141 substituted "section 80a–60(a)(4)(B) of this title" for "section 80a–60(a)(3)(B) of this title".

1987—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 100–181 substituted "subsections (a) and (d) of section 80a–17 of this title" for "sections 80a–17(a) and (d) of this title" in two places.

§80a–57. Changes in investment policy

No business development company shall, unless authorized by the vote of a majority of its outstanding voting securities or partnership interests, change the nature of its business so as to cease to be, or to withdraw its election as, a business development company.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §58, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2285.)

§80a–58. Incorporation of subchapter provisions

Notwithstanding the exemption set forth in section 80–6(f) of this title, sections 80a–1, 80a–2, 80a–3, 80a–4, 80a–5, 80a–6, 80a–9, 80a–10(f), 80a–15(a), (c), and (f), 80a–16(b), 80a–17(f) through (j), 80a–19(a), 80a–20(b), 80a–31(a) and (c), 80a–32 through 80a–46, and 80a–48 through 80a–52 of this title shall apply to a business development company to the same extent as if it were a registered closed-end investment company.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §59, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2285.)

§80a–59. Functions and activities of business development companies

Notwithstanding the exemption set forth in section 80a–6(f) of this title, section 80a–12 of this title shall apply to a business development company to the same extent as if it were a registered closed-end investment company, except that the Commission shall not prescribe any rule, regulation, or order pursuant to section 80a–12(a)(1) of this title governing the circumstances in which a business development company may borrow from a bank in order to purchase any security.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §60, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2285.)

§80a–60. Capital structure

(a) Exceptions for business development company

Notwithstanding the exemption set forth in section 80a–6(f) of this title, section 80a–18 of this title shall apply to a business development company to the same extent as if it were a registered closed-end investment company, except as follows:

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), the asset coverage requirements of subparagraphs (A) and (B) of section 80a–18(a)(1) of this title (and any related rule promulgated under this subchapter) applicable to business development companies shall be 200 percent.

(2) The asset coverage requirements of subparagraphs (A) and (B) of section 80a–18(a)(1) of this title and of subparagraphs (A) and (B) of section 80a–18(a)(2) of this title (and any related rule promulgated under this

subchapter) applicable to a business development company shall be 150 percent if—

(A) not later than 5 business days after the date on which those asset coverage requirements are approved under subparagraph (D) of this paragraph, the business development company discloses that the requirements were approved, and the effective date of the approval, in—

(i) any filing submitted to the Commission under section 78m(a) or 78o(d) of this title; and

(ii) a notice on the website of the business development company;

(B) the business development company discloses, in each periodic filing required under section 78m(a) of this title—

(i) the aggregate outstanding principal amount or liquidation preference, as applicable, of the senior securities issued by the business development company and the asset coverage percentage as of the date of the business development company's most recent financial statements included in that filing;

(ii) that the business development company, under subparagraph (D), has approved the asset coverage requirements under this paragraph; and

(iii) the effective date of the approval described in clause (ii);

(C) with respect to a business development company that is an issuer of common equity securities, each periodic filing of the company required under section 78m(a) of this title includes disclosures that are reasonably designed to ensure that shareholders are informed of—

(i) the amount of senior securities (and the associated asset coverage ratios) of the company, determined as of the date of the most recent financial statements of the company included in that filing; and

(ii) the principal risk factors associated with the senior securities described in clause (i), to the extent that risk is incurred by the company; and

(D) the company—

(i)(I) through a vote of the required majority (as defined in section 80a–56(o) of this title), approves the application of this paragraph to the company, to become effective on the date that is 1 year after the date of the approval; or

(II) obtains, at a special or annual meeting of shareholders or partners at which a quorum is present, the approval of more than 50 percent of the votes cast for the application of this paragraph to the company, to become effective on the first day after the date of the approval; and

(ii) if the company is not an issuer of common equity securities that are listed on a national securities exchange, extends, to each person that is a shareholder as of the date of an approval described in subclause (I) or (II) of clause (i), as applicable, the opportunity (which may include a tender offer) to sell the securities held by that shareholder as of that applicable approval date, with 25 percent of those securities to be repurchased in each of the 4 calendar quarters following the calendar quarter in which that applicable approval date takes place.

(3) Notwithstanding section 80a–18(c) of this title, a business development company may issue more than one class of senior security representing indebtedness.

(4) Notwithstanding section 80a–18(d) of this title—

(A) a business development company may issue warrants, options, or rights to subscribe or convert to voting securities of such company, accompanied by securities, if—

(i) such warrants, options, or rights expire by their terms within ten years;

(ii) such warrants, options, or rights are not separately transferable unless no class of such warrants, options, or rights and the securities accompanying them has been publicly distributed;

(iii) the exercise or conversion price is not less than the current market value at the date of issuance, or if no such market value exists, the current net asset value of such voting securities; and

(iv) the proposal to issue such securities is authorized by the shareholders or partners of such business development company, and such issuance is approved by the required majority (as defined in section 80a–56(o) of this title) of the directors of or general partners in such company on the basis that such issuance is in the best interests of such company and its shareholders or partners;

(B) a business development company may issue, to its directors, officers, employees, and general partners, warrants, options, and rights to purchase voting securities of such company pursuant to an executive compensation plan, if—

(i)(I) in the case of warrants, options, or rights issued to any officer or employee of such business development company (including any officer or employee who is also a director of such company), such securities satisfy the conditions in clauses (i), (iii), and (iv) of subparagraph (A); or (II) in the case of warrants, options, or rights issued to any director of such business development company who is not also an officer or employee of such company, or to any general partner in such company, the proposal to issue such securities satisfies the conditions in clauses (i) and (iii) of subparagraph (A), is authorized by the shareholders or partners of such company, and is approved by order of the Commission, upon application, on the basis that the terms of

the proposal are fair and reasonable and do not involve overreaching of such company or its shareholders or partners;

(ii) such securities are not transferable except for disposition by gift, will, or intestacy;

(iii) no investment adviser of such business development company receives any compensation described in section 80b–5(a)(1) of this title, except to the extent permitted by paragraph (1) or (2) of section 80b–5(b) of this title; and

(iv) such business development company does not have a profit-sharing plan described in section 80a–56(n) of this title; and

(C) a business development company may issue warrants, options, or rights to subscribe to, convert to, or purchase voting securities not accompanied by securities, if—

(i) such warrants, options, or rights satisfy the conditions in clauses (i) and (iii) of subparagraph (A); and

(ii) the proposal to issue such warrants, options, or rights is authorized by the shareholders or partners of such business development company, and such issuance is approved by the required majority (as defined in section 80a–56(o) of this title) of the directors of or general partners in such company on the basis that such issuance is in the best interests of the company and its shareholders or partners.

Notwithstanding this paragraph, the amount of voting securities that would result from the exercise of all outstanding warrants, options, and rights at the time of issuance shall not exceed 25 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of the business development company, except that if the amount of voting securities that would result from the exercise of all outstanding warrants, options, and rights issued to such company's directors, officers, employees, and general partners pursuant to any executive compensation plan meeting the requirements of subparagraph (B) of this paragraph would exceed 15 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of such company, then the total amount of voting securities that would result from the exercise of all outstanding warrants, options, and rights at the time of issuance shall not exceed 20 per centum of the outstanding voting securities of such company.

(5) For purposes of measuring the asset coverage requirements of section 80a–18(a) of this title, a senior security created by the guarantee by a business development company of indebtedness issued by another company shall be the amount of the maximum potential liability less the fair market value of the net unencumbered assets (plus the indebtedness which has been guaranteed) available in the borrowing company whose debts have been guaranteed, except that a guarantee issued by a business development company of indebtedness issued by a company which is a wholly-owned subsidiary of the business development company and is licensed as a small business investment company under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958 [15 U.S.C. 661 et seq.] shall not be deemed to be a senior security of such business development company for purposes of section 80a–18(a) of this title if the amount of the indebtedness at the time of its issuance by the borrowing company is itself taken fully into account as a liability by such business development company, as if it were issued by such business development company, in determining whether such business development company, at that time, satisfies the asset coverage requirements of section 80a–18(a) of this title.

(b) Compliance

A business development company shall comply with the provisions of this section at the time it becomes subject to sections 80a–54 through 80a–64 of this title, as if it were issuing a security of each class which it has outstanding at such time.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §61, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2286; amended Pub. L. 104–290, title V, §506, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3446; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §985(d)(5), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1934; Pub. L. 115–141, div. S, title VIII, §802(a), Mar. 23, 2018, 132 Stat. 1138.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), (2), was in the original "this Act", meaning title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, known as the Investment Company Act of 1940, which is classified generally to this subchapter.

The Small Business Investment Act of 1958, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), is Pub. L. 85–699, Aug. 21, 1958, 72 Stat. 689), which is classified principally to chapter 14B (§661 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 661 of this title and Tables.

Amendments

2018—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 115–141 added pars. (1) and (2), redesignated former pars. (2) to (4) as (3) to (5), respectively, and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "The asset coverage requirements of section 80a–18(a)(1)(A) and (B) of this title applicable to business development companies shall be 200 per centum."

2010—Subsec. (a)(3)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 111–203 substituted "section 80b–5(a)(1) of this title" for "paragraph (1) of section 80b–5 of this title" and "paragraph (1) or (2) of section 80b–5(b) of this title" for "clause (A) or (B) of that section".

1996—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 104–290, §506(1), substituted a period for "if such business development company does not have outstanding any publicly held indebtedness, and all such securities of each class are—

"(A) privately held or guaranteed by the Small Business Administration, or banks, insurance companies, or other institutional investors; and

"(B) not intended to be publicly distributed."

Subsec. (a)(3)(A). Pub. L. 104–290, §506(2)(A), (B), inserted "accompanied by securities," after "of such company," and struck out "senior securities representing indebtedness accompanied by" before "warrants, options, or rights".

Subsec. (a)(3)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 104–290, §506(2)(C), struck out "senior" before "securities".

Subsec. (a)(3)(C). Pub. L. 104–290, §506(3), added subpar. (C).

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date of 2010 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

§80a–61. Loans

Notwithstanding the exemption set forth in section 80a–6(f) of this title, section 80a–21 of this title shall apply to a business development company to the same extent as if it were a registered closed-end investment company, except that nothing in that section shall be deemed to prohibit—

(1) any loan to a director, officer, or employee of, or general partner in, a business development company for the purpose of purchasing securities of such company as part of an executive compensation plan, if such loan meets the requirements of section 80a–56(j) of this title; or

(2) any loan to a company controlled by a business development company, which companies could be deemed to be under common control solely because a third person controls such business development company.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §62, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2287.)

§80a–62. Distribution and repurchase of securities

Notwithstanding the exemption set forth in section 80a–6(f) of this title, section 80a–23 of this title shall apply to a business development company to the same extent as if it were a registered closed-end investment company, except as follows:

(1) The prohibitions of section 80a–23(a)(2) of this title shall not apply to any company which (A) is a wholly-owned subsidiary of, or directly or indirectly controlled by, a business development company, and (B) immediately after the issuance of any of its securities for property other than cash or securities, will not be an investment company within the meaning of section 80a–3(a) of this title.

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of section 80a–23(b) of this title, a business development company may sell any common stock of which it is the issuer at a price below the current net asset value of such stock, and may sell warrants, options, or rights to acquire any such common stock at a price below the current net asset value of such stock, if—

(A) the holders of a majority of such business development company's outstanding voting securities, and the holders of a majority of such company's outstanding voting securities that are not affiliated persons of such company, approved such company's policy and practice of making such sales of securities at the last annual meeting of shareholders or partners within one year immediately prior to any such sale, except that the shareholder approval requirements of this subparagraph shall not apply to the initial public offering by a business development company of its securities;

(B) a required majority (as defined in section 80a–56(o) of this title) of the directors of or general partners in such business development company have determined that any such sale would be in the best interests of such company and its shareholders or partners; and

(C) a required majority (as defined in section 80a–56(o) of this title) of the directors of or general partners in such business development company, in consultation with the underwriter or underwriters of the offering if it is to be underwritten, have determined in good faith, and as of a time immediately prior to the first solicitation by or on behalf of such company of firm commitments to purchase such securities or immediately prior to the issuance of

such securities, that the price at which such securities are to be sold is not less than a price which closely approximates the market value of those securities, less any distributing commission or discount.

(3) A business development company may sell any common stock of which it is the issuer at a price below the current net asset value of such stock upon the exercise of any warrant, option, or right issued in accordance with section 80a–60(a)(4) of this title.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §63, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2288; amended Pub. L. 115–141, div. S, title VIII, §802(b)(2)(B), Mar. 23, 2018, 132 Stat. 1140.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

2018—Par. (3). Pub. L. 115–141 substituted "section 80a–60(a)(4) of this title" for "section 80a–60(a)(3) of this title".

§80a–63. Accounts and records

(a) Exception for business development company

Notwithstanding the exemption set forth in section 80a–6(f) of this title, section 80a–30 of this title shall apply to a business development company to the same extent as if it were a registered closed-end investment company, except that the reference to the financial statements required to be filed pursuant to section 80a–29 of this title shall be construed to refer to the financial statements required to be filed by such business development company pursuant to section 78m of this title.

(b) Risk factors statement; availability

(1) In addition to the requirements of subsection (a), a business development company shall file with the Commission and supply annually to its shareholders a written statement, in such form and manner as the Commission may, by rule, prescribe, describing the risk factors involved in an investment in the securities of a business development company due to the nature of such company's investment portfolio and capital structure, and shall supply copies of such statement to any registered broker or dealer upon request.

(2) If the Commission finds it is necessary or appropriate in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors and the purposes fairly intended by the policy and provisions of this subchapter, the Commission may also require, by rule, any person who, acting as principal or agent, sells a security of a business development company to inform the purchaser of such securities, at or before the time of sale, of the existence of the risk statement prepared by such business development company pursuant to this subsection, and make such risk statement available on request. The Commission, in making such rules and regulations, shall consider, among other matters, whether any such rule or regulation would impose any unreasonable burdens on such brokers or dealers or unreasonably impair the maintenance of fair and orderly markets.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §64, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2289; amended Pub. L. 104–290, title V, §507, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3446.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

1996—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 104–290 inserted "and capital structure" after "portfolio".

§80a–64. Preventing compliance with subchapter; liability of controlling persons

Notwithstanding the exemption set forth in section 80a–6(f) of this title, section 80a–47 of this title shall apply to a business development company to the same extent as if it were a registered closed-end investment company, except that the provisions of section 80a–47(a) of this title shall not be construed to require any company which is not an investment company within the meaning of section 80a–3(a) of this title to comply with the provisions of this subchapter which are applicable to a business development company solely because such company is a wholly-owned subsidiary of, or directly or indirectly controlled by, a business development company.

(Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, title I, §65, as added Pub. L. 96–477, title I, §105, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2289.)